



LBP6030w / LBP6030B / LBP6030

Important Safety Instructions	5
Installation	6
Power Supply	8
Handling	9
Maintenance and Inspections	11
Consumables	12
Basic Operations	14
Parts and Their Functions	15
Front Side	16
Back Side	17
	17
Interior	
Multi-Purpose Tray	19
Printer Status Window	20
Turning the Power ON and OFF	23
Saving Power	24
<u>Setting Sleep Mode</u>	25
<u>Setting Auto Shutdown</u>	26
Loading Paper	27
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray	29
Loading Envelopes	31
Loading Preprinted Paper	33
Printing	34
Basic Print Operations	35
Canceling Print Jobs	37
Checking the Print Status	39
Various Print Settings	40
Enlarging or Reducing	41
Collating Printouts by Page	43
Printing Multiple Pages Onto One Sheet	44
	4 4 45
Printing Posters	-
Printing Borders	46
Printing Dates and Page Numbers	47
Printing Watermarks	48
Printing According to the Document Type	50
Saving Toner	51
Combining and Printing Multiple Documents	52
Configuring Print Settings to Your Needs	55
Registering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Setting	<u>s</u> 56
Changing Default Settings	58
Network	59
Connecting to a Network	60
Connecting to a Wireless LAN	61
Setting IP Addresses	63
Setting IPv4 Address	64
Setting IPv6 Addresses	66
Viewing Network Settings	69
<u>Configuring for Printing from a Computer</u>	71
Configuring Printing Protocols and Web Services	72
Configuring Printer Ports	75
	/ 5

Configurate the Marking for View National Francisco est	70
Configuring the Machine for Your Network Environment	79
Changing the Maximum Transmission Unit	80 82
Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network	82 84
Configuring DNS	88
Configuring WINS	88 90
Configuring NetBIOS	
Configuring SNTP Manitaring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP	92 05
Monitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP	95 99
Configuring SLP Communication with imageWARE	99 101
Security	101
Protecting the Machine from Unauthorized Access	102
Setting System Manager Passwords	105
Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls	105
Changing Port Numbers	
Enabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI	113
Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	115
Generating Key Pairs	114
Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates	110
Verifying Key Pairs and CA Certificates	119
Using the Remote UI Starting the Remote UI	121
Starting the Remote UI Remote UI Screens	122
Managing Documents and Checking the Machine Status	124
Changing Machine Settings	120
<u>Setting Menu List</u>	129
Troubleshooting	130
<u>Clearing Paper Jams</u>	141
When an Error Message Appears	143
Common Problems	147
Installation/Settings Problems	148
Printing Problems	150
When You Cannot Print Properly	150
Printing Results Are Not Satisfactory	152
Paper Creases or Curls	158
Paper Is Fed Incorrectly	160
When a Problem Cannot Be Solved	161
Maintenance	162
Cleaning the Machine	163
Replacing Toner Cartridges	165
Using Up All of the Toner	167
How to Replace Toner Cartridges	169
Printing Setting Lists	171
Viewing the Page Counter Value	173
Initializing Settings	174
Initializing Preferences Settings	175
Initializing System Management Settings	176
Initializing Key and Certificate Settings	178
Relocating the Machine	180
Appendix	181

Feature Highlights	182
Going Green and Saving Money	183
Improving Efficiency	184
So Much More	186
Specifications	188
Machine Specifications	189
Wireless LAN Specifications	191
Paper	192
Consumables	194
Manuals Included with the Machine	195
<u>Using the e-Manual</u>	196
Installing the e-Manual	197
Uninstalling the e-Manual	200
Screen Layout of the e-Manual	202
Viewing the e-Manual	206
Other	207
Basic Windows Operations	208
For Mac OS Users	213
Notice	214
Office Locations	219

Important Safety Instructions

This chapter describes important safety instructions for the prevention of injury to users of this machine and others, and damage to property. Read this chapter before using the machine, and follow the instructions to use the machine properly. Do not perform any operations not described in this manual. Canon will not be responsible for any damages resulting from operations not described in this manual. Canon will not be responsible for any damages resulting from operations not described in this manual, improper use, or repair or changes not performed by Canon or a third party authorized by Canon. Improper operation or use of this machine could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.

Installation

To use this machine safely and in a trouble-free way, carefully read the following precautions and install the machine in an appropriate location.

A WARNING

Do not install in a location that may result in a fire or electrical shock

- A location where the ventilation slots are blocked
- (too close to walls, beds, sofas, rugs, or similar objects)
- A damp or dusty location
- A location exposed to direct sunlight or outdoors
- A location subject to high temperatures
- A location exposed to open flames
- Near alcohol, paint thinners or other flammable substances

Other warnings

- Do not connect unapproved cables to this machine. Doing so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not place necklaces and other metal objects or containers filled with liquid on the machine. If foreign substances come in contact with electrical parts inside the machine, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use near medical equipment. Radio waves emitted from this machine may interfere with medical equipment, which may result in malfunctions and accidents.
- If any foreign substance falls into this machine, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

CAUTION

Do not install in the following locations

The machine may drop or fall, resulting in injury.

- An unstable location
- A location exposed to vibrations



Other cautions

- When carrying this machine, follow the instructions in this manual. If carried improperly, it may fall, resulting in injury.
- When installing this machine, be careful not to get your hands caught between the machine and the floor or walls. Doing so may result in injury.

IMPORTANT

Do not install in the following locations

Doing so may result in damage to the machine.

- A location subject to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity
- A location near equipment that generates magnetic or electromagnetic waves
- . A laboratory or location where chemical reactions occur



- A location exposed to corrosive or toxic gases
- A location that may warp from the weight of the machine or where the machine is liable to sink (a carpet, etc.)

Avoid poorly ventilated locations

This machine generates a slight amount of ozone and other emissions during normal use. These emissions are not harmful to health. However, they may be noticeable during extended use or long production runs in poorly ventilated rooms. To maintain a

comfortable working environment, it is recommended that the room where the machine operates be appropriately ventilated. Also avoid locations where people would be exposed to emissions from the machine.

Do not install in a location where condensation occurs

Water droplets (condensation) may form inside the machine when the room where the machine is installed is heated rapidly, and when the machine is moved from a cool or dry location to a hot or humid location. Using the machine under these conditions may result in paper jams, poor print quality, or damage to the machine. Let the machine adjust to the ambient temperature and humidity for at least 2 hours before use.

When using wireless LAN (LBP6030w)

- . Install the machine at a distance of 50 m or less from the wireless LAN router.
- As far as possible, install in a location where communication is not blocked by intervening objects. The signal may be degraded when passing through walls or floors.
- Keep the machine as far as possible from digital cordless phones, microwave ovens, or other equipment that emits radio waves.

In altitudes of 3,000 m or above sea level

Machines with a hard disk may not operate properly when used at high altitudes of about 3,000 meters above sea level, or higher.

Power Supply

This machine is compatible with voltages of 220 to 240 V, and electrical frequency of 50/60 Hz.

WARNING

- Use only a power supply that meets the specified voltage requirements. Failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use power cords other than the one provided, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not modify, pull, forcibly bend, or perform any other act that may damage the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on the power cord. Damaging the power cord may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not plug in or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this may result in an electrical shock.
- Do not use extension cords or multi-plug power strips with the machine. Doing so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not wrap the power cord or tie it in a knot, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet. Failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Remove the power plug completely from the AC power outlet during a thunder storm. Failure to do so may result in a fire, electrical shock, or damage to the machine.

ACAUTION

Do not obstruct the power outlet where this machine is connected, so that you can unplug the power plug easily in an emergency.

IMPORTANT

When connecting power

- Do not connect the power cord to an uninterruptible power source.
- If you plug this machine into an AC power outlet with multiple sockets, do not use the remaining sockets to connect other devices.
- Do not connect the power cord to the auxiliary AC power outlet on a computer.

Other precautions

Electrical noise may cause this machine to malfunction or lose data.

dill -

Handling

WARNING

- Immediately unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact an authorized Canon dealer if the machine makes an unusual noise, emits an unusual smell, or emits smoke or excessive heat. Continued use may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not disassemble or modify this machine. There are high-voltage and hightemperature components inside the machine. Disassembly or modification may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Place the machine where children will not come in contact with the power cord and other cables or gears and electrical parts inside the machine. Failure to do so may result in unexpected accidents.
- Do not use flammable sprays near this machine. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside this machine, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- When moving this machine, be sure to turn OFF the power of this machine and your computer, and then unplug the power plug and interface cables. Failure to do so may damage the power cord or interface cables, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- When plugging or unplugging a USB cable when the power plug is plugged into an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in an electrical shock.

If you are using a cardiac pacemaker

This machine generates a low level magnetic flux. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from this machine and consult your physician immediately.

ACAUTION

- Do not place heavy objects on this machine as they may fall, resulting in injury.
- For safety, unplug the power plug if the machine will not be used for a long period of time.
- Use caution when opening and closing covers to avoid injury to your hands.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the rollers in the output area. If the rollers catch your hands or clothing, this may result in personal injury.
- The inside of the machine and the output slot are very hot during and immediately after use. Avoid contact with these areas to prevent burns. Also, printed paper may be hot immediately after being output, so use caution when handling it. Failure to do so may result in burns.



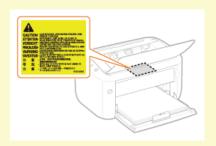
Laser beam

This machine is classified as a Class 1 Laser Product under IEC 60825-1: 2007, EN60825-1: 2007. The laser beam can be harmful to the human body. The laser beam is confined in the laser scanner unit by a cover, so there is no danger of the laser beam escaping during normal machine operation. Read the following remarks and instructions for safety.

- Never open covers other than those indicated in this manual.
- Do not remove the caution label attached to the cover of the laser scanner unit.

If you operate the machine in manners other than the control, adjustment, and operating procedures prescribed in this manual, this may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

If the laser beam should escape and enter your eyes, exposure may cause damage to your eyes.



IMPORTANT

When transporting the machine

To prevent damage to the machine during transport, do the following.

- Remove the toner cartridge.
- Securely pack the machine in the original box with the original packing materials.

Other precautions

- Follow the instructions on the caution label attached to this machine.
- Do not subject the machine to strong shocks or vibration.
- Do not forcibly open and close doors, covers, and other parts. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.
- Do not touch the contacts (
 Doing so may result in damage to the machine.



Do not turn OFF the machine during printing. Also, do not open and close the cover and do not remove or insert paper during printing. Doing so can cause paper jams.

Maintenance and Inspections

Clean this machine periodically. If dust accumulates, the machine may not operate properly. When cleaning, be sure to observe the following. If a problem occurs during operation, see **Croubleshooting**. If the problem cannot be resolved or you feel the machine requires an inspection, see **CWhen a Problem Cannot Be Solved**.

WARNING

- Before cleaning, turn OFF the power and unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet. Failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Unplug the power plug periodically and clean with a dry cloth to remove dust and grime. Accumulated dust may absorb humidity in the air and may result in a fire if it comes into contact with electricity.
- Use a damp, well wrung-out cloth to clean the machine. Dampen cleaning cloths with water only. Do not use alcohol, benzenes, paint thinners, or other flammable substances. Do not use tissue paper or paper towels. If these substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the machine, they may generate static electricity or result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Check the power cord and plug periodically for rust, bent prongs, fraying, cracks, or excessive heat generation. Use of poorlymaintained power cord or plug may result in a fire or electrical shock.

CAUTION

- The inside of the machine has high-temperature and high-voltage components. Touching these components may result in injury or burns. Do not touch any part of the machine that is not indicated in the manual.
- When loading paper or removing jammed paper, be careful not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

When removing jammed paper or replacing toner cartridges, be careful not to get any toner on your hands or clothing. If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water.

Consumables

🗥 WARNING

- Do not dispose of used toner cartridges in open flames. Also, do not store toner cartridges or paper in a location exposed to open flames. This may cause the toner or paper to ignite, and result in burns or fire.
- If you accidentally spill or scatter toner, carefully sweep it up or wipe it up with a damp cloth, and avoid inhaling any toner dust. Do not use a vacuum cleaner to clean up loose toner unless it is equipped with safety measures to prevent dust explosions. Doing so may cause damage to the vacuum cleaner or result in a dust explosion due to static discharge.

If you are using a cardiac pacemaker

Toner cartridges generate a low level magnetic flux. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from toner cartridges and consult your physician immediately.

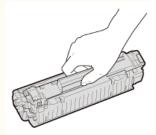
CAUTION

- Use caution not to inhale any toner. If you should inhale toner, consult a physician immediately.
- Use caution so that toner does not get into your eyes or mouth. If toner should get into your eyes or mouth, immediately wash it away with cold water and consult a physician.
- Use caution so that toner does not come into contact with your skin. If it should, wash it off with soap and cold water. If your skin is irritated, consult a physician immediately.
- Keep toner cartridges and other consumables out of the reach of small children. If toner is ingested, consult a physician or poison control center immediately.
- Do not disassemble or modify the toner cartridge. Doing so may cause the toner to scatter.
- Remove the sealing tape of the toner cartridge completely without using excessive force. Doing so may cause the toner to scatter.

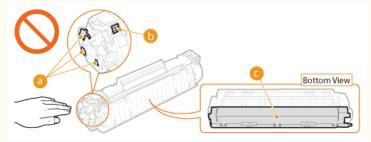
IMPORTANT

Handling the toner cartridge

Be sure to use the holder to hold the toner cartridge.



Do not touch the electrical contacts (a) or toner cartridge memory (b). Do not open the drum protection shutter(c). Doing so risks scratching the drum surface or exposing it to light.



The toner cartridge is a magnetic product. Keep it away from floppy disks, disk drives, and other devices that can be affected by magnetism. Failure to do so may result in data loss.

Storing toner cartridges

- To ensure safe and satisfactory performance, store toner cartridges under the following environmental conditions. Storage temperature range: 0 to 35 °C
- Storage humidity range: 35 to 85% RH (relative humidity), no condensation*
- Store without opening until the toner cartridge is to be used.
- When removing the toner cartridge from this machine for storage, place the removed toner cartridge into the original

protective bag or wrap it with a thick cloth.

- When storing the toner cartridge, do not store it upright or upside down. The toner may solidify and not return to its original condition even if it is shaken.
- * Even within the storable humidity range, water droplets (condensation) may develop inside the toner cartridge if there is a difference of temperature inside and outside the toner cartridge. Condensation inside the toner cartridge will adversely affect print quality.

Do not store the toner cartridge in the following locations

- Locations exposed to open flames
- . Locations exposed to direct sunlight or bright light for five minutes or more
- Locations exposed to excessive salty air
- Locations where there are corrosive gases (i.e. aerosol sprays and ammonia)
- Locations subject to high temperature and high humidity
- Locations subject to dramatic changes in temperature and humidity where condensation may easily occur
- Locations with a large amount of dust
- Locations within the reach of children

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges

Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counterfeit toner cartridge may result in poor print quality or machine performance. Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.

For more information, see http://www.canon.com/counterfeit.

Availability of repair parts and toner cartridges

Repair parts and toner cartridges for this machine will be available for at least seven (7) years after production of this machine model has been discontinued.

Toner cartridge packing materials

- Save the protective bag for the toner cartridge. It is required when transporting this machine.
- Packing materials may be changed in form or placement, or may be added or removed without notice.
- Dispose of removed sealing tape according to local regulations.

Disposal of used toner cartridges

Place the toner cartridge into its protective bag to prevent the toner from scattering, and then dispose of the toner cartridge according to local regulations.

Basic Operations

This chapter describes the parts of the machine and basic operations, such as how to load paper.

Parts and Their Functions

This section describes the names and functions of the exterior and interior parts of the machine. **Parts and Their Functions**



Printer Status Window

This section explains how to use the "Printer Status Window" utility to check the machine's status and make machine settings. **©Printer** Status Window



■Turning the Power ON and OFF

This section explains how to turn the power ON and OFF. OTUrning the Power ON and OFF



Saving Power

This section explains how to reduce the machine's power consumption. **Osaving Power**



Loading Paper

This section explains how to load paper into the multi-purpose tray. OLOAding Paper



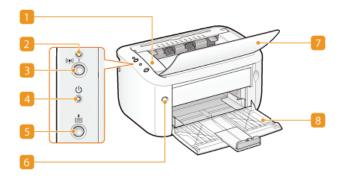
Parts and Their Functions

This section describes the parts of the machine (exterior, front and back side, and interior) and how they function. It also describes the parts of the machine used for basic operations such as loading paper and replacing the toner cartridge, and explains the meaning of indications by the keys and indicators on the front side. Read this section for tips on how to use the machine properly.



Front Side
Back Side
Interior
Multi-Purpose Tray

Front Side



🚺 Top cover

Open the top cover to replace the toner cartridge or clear a paper jam. **Ohow to Replace Toner Cartridges Ocearing Paper Jams**

<u> (</u>(h) (Wi-Fi) indicator (LBP6030w)

Lights up when the machine is connected to a wireless LAN.

🛐 (⑾) (Wi-Fi) key (LBP6030w)

Use this key when setting up a wireless LAN connection by using the WPS push-button method.

NOTE:

You can also keep the (m) (Wi-Fi) key pressed while turning ON the power to initialize the system management settings. **Initializing by Using the Wi-Fi Key**

🗿 👍 (Power) indicator

Lights up when the machine is powered ON.

<u>5</u> 🛓 (Paper) key

Flashes when the machine is out of paper, when the paper is the wrong size, and after other errors when the paper needs to be checked. Reset the paper and press the key to restart printing.

NOTE:

You can also use the \downarrow (Paper) key to print a list of network settings (with the machine ready to print, press the key and hold it down for 3 seconds). **Viewing Network Settings**

👩 Power switch

Turns the power ON or OFF. OTurning the Power ON and OFF

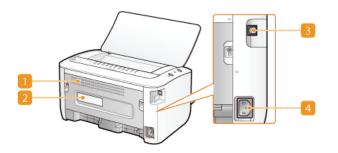
🛜 Output tray

Open this tray before printing. Printed paper is output to the output tray.

8 Multi-purpose tray

Load the paper to print in this tray. OLoading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Back Side



Ventilation slots

Air from inside the machine is vented out to cool down the inside of the machine. Note that placing objects in front of the ventilation slots prevents ventilation. **DINSTALLATION**

🔁 Rating label

The label shows the serial number, which is needed when making inquiries about the machine. **OWhen a Problem Cannot Be Solved**

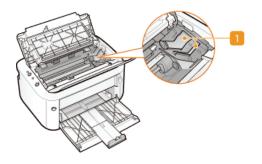
USB port

Connect a USB cable when connecting the machine and a computer.

🗿 Power socket

Connect the power cord.

Interior



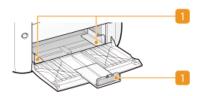
Toner cartridge guide

When loading a toner cartridge, align the protrusions on the left and right sides of the cartridge with the guide. OHOW to Replace Toner Cartridges

LINKS

©Replacing Toner Cartridges

Multi-Purpose Tray



🚹 Paper guides

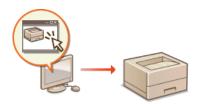
Adjust the paper guides to exactly the size of the loaded paper to ensure that paper is fed straight into the machine.

LINKS

OLoading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Printer Status Window

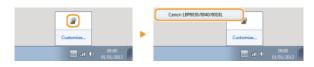
The Printer Status Window is a utility that allows you to check the machine's status, view error information, and make settings related to the machine, such as power saving settings. You can also use it for operations such as cancelling a print job or printing a list of the machine's settings. The Printer Status Window utility is installed on your computer automatically when you install the printer driver (Printer Driver Installation Guide).



Displaying the Printer Status Window
Parts of the Screen and Their Functions

Displaying the Printer Status Window

Select the machine by clicking $\mathbf{\underline{B}}$ in the system tray.



NOTE

Automatic Display of the Printer Status Window

The Printer Status Window is displayed automatically when an error occurs during printing.

* You can change the setting that determines when the Printer Status Window is displayed automatically. Change it with the [Options] menu [Preferences (Users)] or [Preferences (Administrators)] dialog box of the Printer Status Window. For details, see the Help. [Preferences (Administrators)] dialog box of the Printer Status Window.

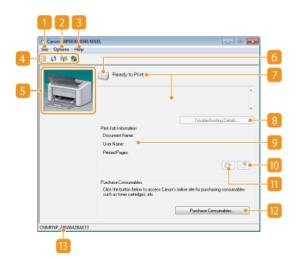
If you are using Windows 8/Server 2012

Display the Printer Status Window after moving to the desktop.

Displaying from the Printer Driver Click in the printer driver screen.

Parts of the Screen and Their Functions

This section provides an outline of the main screen. For detailed descriptions of the dialog boxes that can be displayed with the controls and menus in this screen, see the Help. **O[Help] menu**



🚺 [Job] menu

Allows you to check documents that are printing or waiting. You can also select documents and cancel printing.

👩 [Options] menu

Allows you to execute maintenance functions, such as printing setting lists or cleaning the fixing unit, and to make machine settings, such as power saving settings. You can also check information such as the total number of pages printed.

🛐 [Help] menu

Displays Help about the Printer Status Window and version information.

NOTE:

You can also display the Printer Status Window Help by clicking the [Help] button in the various dialog boxes. However, some dialog boxes do not have a [Help] button.

[Toolbar

(Print Queue)

Displays the print queue, a Windows function. See the Windows Help for more information about the print queue.

(Refresh)

Refreshes the Printer Status Window with the latest information.

(Wireless LAN Status) (LBP6030w)

Allows you to check the connection status (signal strength) of the wireless LAN.

🧞 (Remote UI) (LBP6030w)

Starts the Remote UI. OUsing the Remote UI

6 Animation area

Displays animations and illustrations about the machine's status. After an error occurs, this area may also display a simple explanation of how to deal with the error.

👩 Icon

Displays an icon that indicates the machine's status. The normal status is \square but when an error occurs, the display changes to one of \square / \square , depending on the message.

7 Message area

Displays messages about the machine's status. If an error or warning occurs, this area displays an explanation beneath the error message or warning, together with information about how to deal with the problem. **OWhen an Error Message Appears**

[Troubleshooting Details]

Displays troubleshooting information for problems described by messages.

[Print Job Information]

Displays information about the document that is currently being printed.

🔞 [* (Cancel Job)

Cancels the printing of the document currently being printed.

(Continue/Retry)

When an error has occurred, but printing can be continued, this button allows you to clear the error and resume printing. However, if you use the Continue/Retry function to resume printing, partially printed pages or other improper printing may occur.

[Purchase Consumables]

If you click [Purchase Consumables] > select your country or region > click [OK], a Canon Web site page is displayed where you can find information about purchasing consumables.

<u> Status</u> bar

Displays the connection destination (port name) of the Printer Status Window.

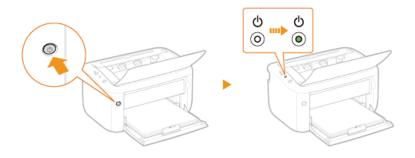
Turning the Power ON and OFF

Use the power switch on the front side of the machine to turn the power ON and OFF. To restart the machine, turn the machine OFF, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

Turning the Power ONTurning the Power OFF

Turning the Power ON

When you press the power switch, the 0 (Power) indicator lights and the machine is ready for printing.

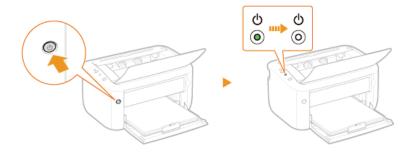


NOTE

A blank sheet of paper may be output when you turn ON the power for the first time after purchasing the machine. This is not a malfunction.

Turning the Power OFF

When you press the power switch, the 0 (Power) indicator goes out and the power is turned OFF.



NOTE

Even when the power is turned OFF, the machine continues to consume a small amount of power. To reduce power consumption to zero, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

Saving Power

You can save power by setting up the machine to automatically enter sleep mode or turn itself OFF after it remains idle for a certain length of time.



Setting Sleep ModeSetting Auto Shutdown

Setting Sleep Mode

The sleep mode function reduces the amount of power consumed by the machine by temporarily stopping some internal operations. You can set up the machine to enter sleep mode automatically when it remains idle for a certain length of time. The factory default setting for the amount of time that elapses before the machine enters sleep mode is 1 minute. We recommend using the factory default setting to save the most power. If you want to change the amount of time that elapses before the machine enters sleep mode, follow the procedure below in the Printer Status Window.

NOTE

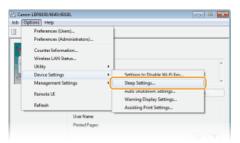
Situations in which the machine does not enter sleep mode

- The machine does not enter sleep mode when it is receiving print data from a computer, when a cover is open, when a toner cartridge is not loaded, and in some other situations.
- Depending on your environment, the machine may not enter sleep mode when it is connected to a wireless LAN network.

Select the machine by clicking 🔐 in the system tray.



2 Select [Options] ▶ [Device Settings] ▶ [Sleep Settings].



3 Make sleep mode settings, and click [OK].



[Auto Sleep after Fixed Period]

Select the check box to enter sleep mode after the time specified with [Enter Auto Sleep After].

[Enter Auto Sleep After]

Specify the length of time after which the machine enters sleep mode. You can select from 1 to 180 minutes.

Setting Auto Shutdown

You can set up the machine to automatically turn itself OFF after it remains idle for a certain length of time. This prevents wasted power consumption caused by forgetting to turn the machine OFF. The factory default setting for the amount of time that elapses before the power is turned OFF is 4 hours. If you want to change this setting, perform the following procedure in the Printer Status Window.

NOTE

If you set the time until the power is turned OFF to a time shorter than the factory default setting, the lifetime of the toner cartridge may be shorter.

Select the machine by clicking 🔐 in the system tray.



2 Select [Options] ▶ [Device Settings] ▶ [Auto Shutdown Settings].

references (Administrators)	- H		
Counter Information			
Vireless LAN Status			
Aliity	· ·		*
Nevice Settings		Settings to Disable Wi-Fi Key	
Management Settings	•	Sileen Settinos	
lemote UE		Auto Shutdown Settings	
		Warning Usplay Settings	1
(efresh	_	Assisting Print Settings	
	Vireless LAN Status Aläity Device Settings Management Settings	Vireless LAN Status Jäfity + Device Settings + Janagement Settings + Itemote UI	Vindess LAN Datum. Nitry Nitry Arragement Settings Izeroite UK Izeroite UK Izeroite UK Izeroite UK

3 Make auto shutdown settings, and click [OK].

Auto Shutdown Settings			
Auto Shutdown alter Field Period			
Auto Shuldown After:		4 • h.	
	OK	Cancel	Heb

[Auto Shutdown after Fixed Period]

Select the check box to enable auto shutdown after the time specified with [Auto Shutdown After].

[Auto Shutdown After]

Specify the length of time until the machine executes auto shutdown, starting from the time when the machine enters sleep mode. You can select from 1 hour to 8 hours, in units of 1 hour.

Loading Paper

This section explains how to load paper into the multi-purpose tray. See **Paper** for information about available paper sizes.



Paper Type and Printer Driver Paper Settings

Before printing, refer to the table below and make the appropriate paper settings in the printer driver, according to the type of paper that you have loaded. See **OBasic Print Operations** for detailed information about paper settings, and see **OPaper** for information about the number of sheets that can be set.

	Paper Type	Printer Driver Paper Setting
Plain paper *1	60 to 63 g/m ²	[Plain L]
гаш рарег т	64 to 89 g/m²	[Plain]
Heavy paper	90 to 163 g/m ²	[Heavy] [Heavy H] *2
Transparency *3 *4		[Transparency]
Labels *4		[Labels]
Envelope		[Envelope]

 $^{\ast 1}$ Recycled paper can be used.

*2 If toner is not fully fixed and printouts are faded when you select [Heavy], select this instead.

*3 Use laser printer transparencies.

*4 Use A4 or Letter size only.

IMPORTANT

Do not use the following types of paper:

- Wrinkled or creased paper
- Ourled or rolled paper
- Torn paper
- Damp paper
- Very thin paper
- Paper printed by a thermal transfer printer
- Paper with a coarse texture
- Glossy paper

Paper handling and storage

- Store paper on a flat surface.
- Keep paper wrapped in its original package to protect the paper from moisture or dryness.
- Do not store paper in a way that may cause it to curl or fold.
- Do not store paper vertically or stack too many packages of paper.
- Do not store paper in direct sunlight, or in a place subject to high humidity, dryness, or drastic changes in temperature or humidity.

NOTE

When printing on paper that has absorbed moisture

Steam may be emitted from the paper output area, or water droplets may form around the paper output area. This is not a

malfunction. It occurs when the heat used to fix toner on the paper causes moisture in the paper to evaporate (most likely to occur at low room temperatures).

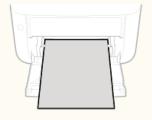
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Load the paper to print in the multi-purpose tray.

IMPORTANT

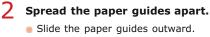
Always load paper in portrait orientation

Paper cannot be loaded in landscape orientation. Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation, as shown in the illustration below.





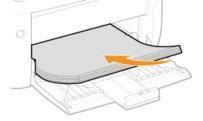






3 Load the paper and slide it all the way in, until it touches the back side.

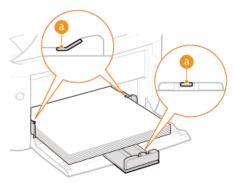
- Load the paper in portrait orientation (with the short edge toward the machine) and the print side face up. Paper cannot be loaded in landscape orientation.
- Before loading it, fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Keep the paper stack within the load limit guides.

Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit guides (6). Loading too much paper can cause paper jams.



NOTE:

When loading envelopes or preprinted paper, see **OLoading Envelopes** or **OLoading Preprinted Paper**.

4 Align the paper guides against the edges of the paper.

Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper.



IMPORTANT:

Align the paper guides securely against the paper

Paper guides that are too loose or too tight can cause misfeeds or paper jams.

NOTE

After reloading paper that has run out during printing, or resetting the paper after a paper error notification, press the 📋 (Paper) key to restart printing.

Printing on the Back Side of Printed Paper (Manual 2-Sided Printing)

You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray with the side to print face up (previously printed side face down).

- Load only one sheet of paper each time you print.
- You can use only paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has been previously printed.

LINKS

Paper

Loading Envelopes

Make sure to flatten any curls on envelopes before loading them. Also pay attention to the orientation of envelopes and which side is face up.

Before Loading Envelopes

Control Con

NOTE

This section explains how to load envelopes in the orientation you want, as well as preparations that you need to complete before loading envelopes. For a complete description of the procedure for loading envelopes in the multi-purpose tray, see **CLOADING Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray**.

Before Loading Envelopes

Follow the procedure below to prepare the envelopes before loading.

1 Close the flap of each envelope.



2 Press down to expel air from the envelopes and make sure that the folds on all four sides are sharp and that the stack is flat.



 $\mathbf{3}$ Remove curls by flexing the stiff sections at the four corners.



4 Tap the stack on a flat surface to even the edges of the envelopes.

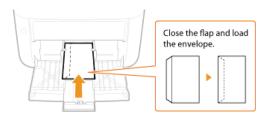


Loading Envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Load the envelopes Monarch, No. 10 (COM10), DL, or C5 in portrait orientation (with the short edge toward the machine), with the nonglued side (front side) face up. You cannot print on the reverse side of envelopes.

NOTE

Load the envelopes so that the edge with the flap is toward the left side as shown in the illustration.



Loading Preprinted Paper

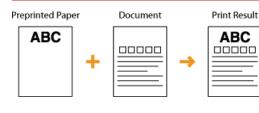
When you use paper that has been preprinted with a logo or other information, pay attention to the orientation of the paper when loading. Load the paper with the logo side (the side on which to print the document) face up and in the proper orientation for the layout of the document.

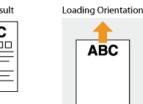
ABC

NOTE

This section explains how to load preprinted paper with the proper orientation and the right side face up. For a complete description of the procedure for loading paper in the multi-purpose tray, see **DLOADING Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray**.

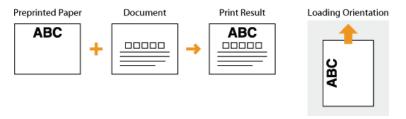
Printing Paper with a Logo in Portrait Orientation





ABC

Printing Paper with a Logo in Landscape Orientation



Printing

You can print documents made with applications on your computer by using the printer driver. There are useful settings in the printer driver, such as enlarging/reducing and poster printing, that enable you to print your documents in various ways. Before you can use these functions, you need to install the printer driver on your computer and complete some other preparations. For details, see Printer Driver Installation Guide.



NOTE

Depending on the operating system and the type or version of the printer driver you are using, the printer driver screens in this manual may differ from your screens.

About the Printer Driver Help

Clicking [Help] on the printer driver screen displays the Help screen. On this screen, you can see detailed descriptions that are not in the e-Manual.

A4 [Scaling: Auto]	en la centra de la	-
Vew Settings		
Restore Defaults		
	P .	
		OK Carcel H

Basic Print Operations

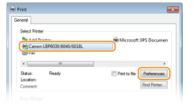
This section explains how to print a document on your computer by using the printer driver.



Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.

How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

Select this machine and click [Preferences] or [Properties].



The screen that is displayed differs depending on the application you are using.

3 Set the paper size.

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Setup Rhishing	Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	Default Settings 🔹	Add(1) Edit(2)
Output Method: 🚔 P	wit -	
	Page Size: Ad	Copies(2): 1 (1 to 990) • Oteration • A @ Potrst A @ Landscape
	Page Layout:	Manual Scaing Scaing 100
	Binding Location:	
	Long Edge [Left]	- Guter
	Frishing:	

👩 [Page Size]

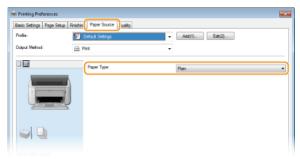
Select the size that you used when you created the document in the application.

[Output Size]

Select the paper size to be used in the actual printing. If you select a size that differs from [Page Size], the printer driver will automatically enlarge or reduce the data to match the [Output Size]. **CEnlarging or Reducing**

4 In the [Paper Source] tab, select the paper type.

Set [Paper Type] according to the type of paper to be used in the printing. OPaper Type and Printer Driver Paper Settings





Set other printing preferences as necessary. OVarious Print Settings

NOTE:

You can register the settings you specified in this step as a "profile" and use the profile whenever you print. This eliminates the need to specify the same settings every time you print. **©Registering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings**

6 Click [OK].

A4 [Scaling: Auto]	
Vew Settings	
	Restore Defaults
	OK Cancel Help

7 Click [Print] or [OK].

🖶 Print	
General	
Select Plinter	
School Add Printer	Hicrosoft XPS Documen
(#g)Canon LBP6030/6040/6018L	
<	÷
Status: Ready	Print to file Preferences
Location: Comment	Find Printer
comer	
Page Range	
Al	Number of copies: 1 🚭
Selection Current Page	
Pagea: 1-65535	11 22 33
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	1-2-3-
P	nt Cancel Acoly

Important Printing starts. On some applications, a screen like the one shown below appears.



If a screen like the one shown above appears, you can cancel printing by clicking [Cancel]. If the screen disappears or is never displayed, you can cancel printing in other ways. Canceling Print Jobs

IMPORTANT

Do not touch printed pages

Do not touch newly printed sheets with your fingers or a cloth. You may get your fingers or the cloth dirty, and the toner may smear or come off the page.

NOTE

When printing from a Windows Store app in Windows 8/Server 2012

Display the charms on the right side of the screen, and proceed as follows.

Windows 8/Server 2012
Tap or click [Devices] ▶ the machine you are using ▶ [Print].
Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2
Tap or click [Devices] ▶ [Print] ▶ the machine you are using ▶ [Print].
When you print in this way, you can only use some of the print settings.

• If the message <The printer requires your attention. Go to the desktop to take care of it.> is displayed, go to your desktop and follow the instructions in the dialog box on the screen. This message is displayed when you need to enter your user name before printing, or when there is some other setting that requires your attention.

LINKS

Checking the Print Status

Canceling Print Jobs

You can cancel print jobs from the Printer Status Window.

1 Select the machine by clicking 🚇 in the system tray.



The Printer Status Window is displayed.

2 Cancel the print job.

To cancel a print job that is currently printing

Click 🌁.

Canon LBP6030/6040/6018L			
lob Options Help			
C) 66 🚱			
	Printing		*
			*
			Troubleshooting Details .
	I Job Information		
	ocument Name:	Document 1.rf	
U	ser Name:	User01	
Pi	inted Pages:	0	
			2 (*)

Printing of the current document is canceled.

■ To cancel a print job that is waiting

1 Select [Job] ▶ [Job Status].

Ganon LBP6030/6040/6018L	G 📕
ob Options Help	
Continue/Retry	
Cancel Job	
Job Status	
Print Queue	*

2 Select the document that you want to cancel, and click [Delete].

sb Status		-
lob List		
Document Name	Liber Name	Status
Door must 1 st	U ser01	Printing
Document 2.tt	U ser01	Waiting
IN LOCATION 3.10	U ser01	Waiting
		Reliesh Delete
		OK. Help

This screen displays up to five documents.

3 Click [OK].

Delete Job	
0	The selected job will be deleted. Click [OR] to delete the job and close the [Job Status] dialog box.
	OK Cancel

Printing of the selected document is canceled.

NOTE

Several pages may be output after you cancel printing.

TIPS

Canceling from the Remote UI (LBP6030w)

You can cancel printing from the [Job Status] page on the Remote UI. OChecking the Current Status of Print Documents

Canceling from an application

On some applications, a screen like the one shown below is displayed during printing. You can cancel printing by clicking [Cancel].



LINKS

Basic Print OperationsChecking the Print Status

Checking the Print Status

You can check the current print status in the Printer Status Window. This is convenient if you have been waiting for a long time for your document to be printed, and you want to see a list of the documents waiting to be printed.



2 Select [Job] ▶ [Job Status].

anon LBP6030/6040/6018L	
Options Help	
Continue/Retry	
Cancel Job	
Job Status	
Print Queue	*

➡ A list of up to 5 documents appears, showing documents that are being printed or waiting to be printed.

ocument Name	Lizer Nerrei	Shuhan
Document 1.#	Use@1	Printing
Document 2.th	Usei01	Waiting
Document 3.41	Use(01	Waiting
		Retron

TIPS

Checking from the Remote UI (LBP6030w)

You can check the print status on the [Job Status] page of the Remote UI. OChecking the Current Status of Print Documents

Checking the history of printed documents (LBP6030w)

You can check the history of documents that have been printed on the [Job Log] page of the Remote UI. When you cannot find printouts that you thought had been printed, you may want to check whether an error has occurred. Checking the History of Printed Documents

LINKS

Basic Print Operations
Canceling Print Jobs

Various Print Settings

There are a variety of print settings that you can use, such as enlarged/reduced printing and poster printing. Select the settings that you need for the document that you want to print.



©Enlarging or Reducing



OPrinting Posters

Printing Watermarks





Collating Printouts by Page



Printing According to the Document Type



Printing Multiple Pages Onto One Sheet



OPrinting Dates and Page Numbers



Saving Toner



Combining and Printing Multiple Documents

Enlarging or Reducing

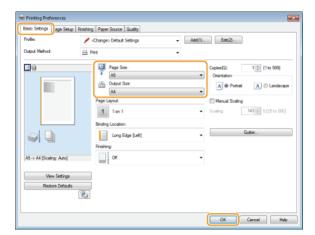


You can make enlarged or reduced printouts by using a preset print ratio, such as A5 to A4, or a custom print ratio that you set in increments of 1%.

Specifying the Print Ratio by Specifying the Original Document and Paper Size (Preset Ratio)

The print ratio is set automatically based on the document and paper size you have selected.

[Basic Settings] tab > Select the document size in [Page Size] > Select the paper size in [Output Size] > [OK]



Specifying the Print Ratio in Increments of 1%

[Basic Settings] tab > Select the [Manual Scaling] check box > Enter the print ratio in [Scaling] > [OK]

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings age Setup R	ishing Paper Source Quality	
Profile :	🖋 «Change» Default Settings	Add(1) Edtt(2)
Output Method:	🚔 Pint	•
At (Scalary 702)	Page Soc. Ad Model Soc. Match Page Soc. <td>Copies2): 1 (1 to 900) Oversation Warval Scaling Scaling: 2 (2 to 200) Guider</td>	Copies2): 1 (1 to 900) Oversation Warval Scaling Scaling: 2 (2 to 200) Guider
Vew Settings Restore Defaults	2 2	
		OK Cancel Help

NOTE

- Depending on the selected paper size, you may not be able to set an appropriate enlarging/reducing ratio. For example, there may be large blank spaces on your printout, or portions of the document may be missing.
- The enlarging/reducing settings on some applications take priority over those of the printer driver.

LINKS

Collating Printouts by Page



When printing copies of multi-page documents, you can use the collate function to print complete sets in sequential page order. This function is useful when preparing handouts for meetings or presentations.

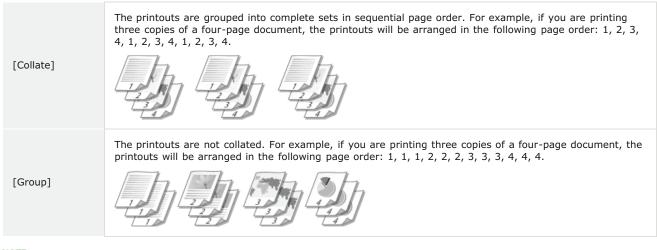


[Basic Settings] tab > Select [Collate] or [Group] in [Finishing] > [OK]

asic Settings age Setup Rni	shing Paper Source Quality	
totle:	🖊 «Change» Default Settings	Add(1) Edit(2)
Autput Method:	Pint .	•
9	Page Size:	Copies(Q): 1 1 [1 to 999]
	A4	 Orientation
	Output Sze:	A @ Potrat A O Landece
	Match Page Size	•
	Page Layout:	Manual Scaling
	1 1on 1	 Scaling 100 ≤ 2(25 to 20)
	Binding Location:	
🥥 🛄	Long Edge [Left]	Gutter
	Frishing:	
Al [Scaling: Auto]	Colare	•
Vew Settings		
	5	
Restore Defaults	5	OK Careal

👩 [Finishing]

Specify the sorting method of the printouts when printing multiple-page documents.



NOTE:

If you select [Off], whether the printouts are collated or not depends on the setting made in the application.

LINKS

Printing Multiple Pages Onto One Sheet



You can print multiple pages onto a single sheet. For example, you can print four or nine pages onto a single sheet by using [4 on 1] or [9 on 1]. Use this function if you want to save paper or to view your document in thumbnails.



[Basic Settings] tab \blacktriangleright In [Page Layout], select the number of page to print onto a single sheet \blacktriangleright In [Page Order], select the page distribution layout \blacktriangleright [OK]

	Printing Preferences	
		ishing Paper Source Quality
ì	Profile :	🖌 «Change» Default Settings 🗾 🗸 Add(1) 🛛 Edk(2)
	Output Method:	≓ Piet •
		Page Sce. Copier(2): 1(2): (110: 500) Image: A copier (2): Image: A copier (2): <t< th=""></t<>
	U U 3 4	Page Layout:
	i 🖓 🕒	Long Eige [Left]
	A4 [Scaling: Auto]	er •
	View Settings Restore Defaults	e,
		OK Cancel Hulp

[Page Layout]

Select the number of pages to print onto a single sheet from [1 on 1] to [16 on 1]. For example, to print 16 pages onto a single sheet, select [16 on 1].



NOTE:

- For options such as [Poster [2 x 2]], see OPrinting Posters.
- Printing may not be performed properly if you combine this setting with an application setting for collating printouts.

[Page Order]

Select a page distribution layout. For example, if you select [Across from Left], the first page is printed on the top left, and then the rest of the pages are arranged rightward.



LINKS

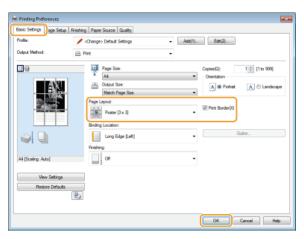
Printing Posters



You can print parts of a single document page onto multiple pages, which can then be combined to make a poster. For example, if you divide an A4 page into nine parts, print each part nine times larger, and then combine the parts, you will have a poster as large as nine A4 pages.



[Basic Settings] tab \triangleright In [Page Layout], select a poster size by specifying the number of parts to be printed, for example [Poster [3 x 3]] \triangleright [OK]



- There are four size settings: [Poster [1 x 2]], [Poster [2 x 2]], [Poster [3 x 3]], and [Poster [4 x 4]].
- Select the [Print Border] check box to add borders on your printouts. The borders are helpful if you want to paste the printouts together or cut off the margins.

LINKS

Basic Print Operations
 Enlarging or Reducing

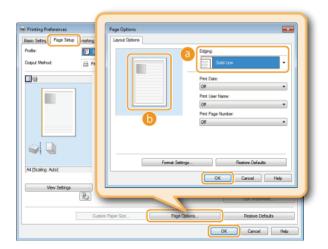
Printing Borders



You can add borders, such as broken lines or double lines, in the margins of printouts.



[Page Setup] tab > Click [Page Options] > Select the border type in [Edging] > [OK] > [OK]



[Edging]

Selects the type of border to add to the document.

🚯 Preview

Displays a preview with the selected border.

LINKS

Basic Print Operations
 Printing Dates and Page Numbers
 Printing Watermarks

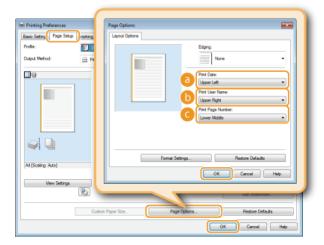
Printing Dates and Page Numbers



You can print information such as dates or page numbers, and you can specify where to print this information on the document (upper left, lower right, etc.).



[Page Setup] tab \blacktriangleright Click [Page Options] \blacktriangleright Select the printing position for the date, user name, and page number \blacktriangleright [OK] \lfloor [OK]



[Print Date]

Specifies the printing position for the print date.

[Print User Name]

Specifies the position to print the user name (logon name) of the person using the computer that printed the document.

[Print Page Number]

Specifies the position to print the page number.

Changing the Print Format of Dates and Page Numbers

You can change formatting details such as font and font size when printing dates, logon names, or page numbers. Click [Format Settings] on the [Page Options] screen shown above to specify the details.

LINKS

Basic Print Operations
 Printing Borders
 Printing Watermarks

Printing Watermarks

You can print watermarks such as "COPY" or "CONFIDENTIAL" on the document. You can create new watermarks or use pre-registered watermarks.



[Page Setup] tab > Select [Watermark] check box > Select the watermark type with [Watermark Name] > [OK]

Basic Setting	Page Setup	nishing Paper Source Quality		_
		Change> Default Settings	 Add(1) Edt(2) 	
Output Method	t:	🚔 Pint	•	
8		Page Size:	M	
		Output Size:	Match Page Size	•
		Copies:	1 (1 to 999)	
	1	Orientation	trat 🔺 🔿 Landscape	
	<u>h</u>	Page Layout:	1 1 on 1	•
-1.4		Manual Scaling		
A4 [Scaling: A	luto]	Scaling	100 🗇 🎘 (25 to 200)	
W	ew Settings	Watemark Watemark Name:	CONFIDENTIAL	
	(Edit Watermark	
		Custon Paper Size	Page Options Restore Defaults	

[Watermark]/[Watermark Name]

Select the [Watermark] check box to display a list of watermarks in the [Watermark Name] drop-down list. Select a watermark to use from the list.

🜔 [Edit Watermark] 🗾

Displays the screen to create or edit watermarks.

Edit Watermark		
	Watemat Lit: *COPY *ORAFT *FLE COPY *FRAM, *FREUMNARY *FREUMNARY *FOR *F	
Nane:	Sangle	
Attributes Alignment Print Style		
Test:	Sample	
Fant:	Aid	
Style:	Regular -	
Sibe	72 Points [1 to 500]	
Color	Medium Gray 👻	
L		
	OK	Cancel Help

[Add] 📀

Click to create a new watermark. Up to 50 watermarks can be registered.

🔞 [Name]

Enter the name of the new watermark.

[Attributes]/[Alignment]/[Print Style]

Click each tab to specify the text, color, or print position of the watermark name. For more information about the settings, click [Help] on the printer driver screen.

Printing BordersPrinting Dates and Page Numbers

Printing According to the Document Type



You can specify the document type to ensure optimal image quality. There are different settings for photo documents, documents that have charts or graphs, and documents that have design drawings with fine lines.



[Quality] tab > Select the document type in [Objective] > [OK]

Printing Preferences Basic Settings Page Setup	Rnishing Paper Sours	
Profile:	🖋 «Change» Default Settings	Add(1) Edit(2)
Cuput Method:	Part	General Placatione Guptes Designs [CAD] The node is best suited for priving photo images.
View Settings	🖭 Manud Grancele Settings	Advanced Settings Gregoratio Settings Root. Pedice Details
		OK Cancel Help

[Objective]

Select an option that suits the document type or purpose of printing. For example, select [General] for general use, or select [Photos] when you want to print photo images in optimal print quality.

[General]	A versatile option that is suitable when printing most documents.
[Publications]	Suitable when printing documents that have a mix of photo images, charts, and graphs.
[Graphics]	Suitable when printing documents that have charts or graphs.
[Photos]	Suitable when printing photo images.
[Designs [CAD]]	Suitable when printing design drawings that have many fine lines.

NOTE:

To specify detailed settings for each item selected with [Objective], click [Advanced Settings]. For more information about the settings, click [Help] on the printer driver screen.

LINKS

Saving Toner



You can set the printer driver to print documents using less toner.

IMPORTANT

When the save toner setting is enabled, fine lines and sections with lighter density may be less sharp that normal.



[Quality] tab \blacktriangleright Select the document type in [Objective] \blacktriangleright Click [Advanced Settings] \blacktriangleright Select [Toner Save] in the [Advanced Settings] screen \blacktriangleright Select [On] from the drop-down list \blacktriangleright [OK] \blacktriangleright [OK]

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Setup	Rnishing Paper Sourc Quality	
Profile:	🖊 «Change» Default Settings	✓ Add(1) Edt(2)
Output Method:	🛱 Rint	•
	Clastive:	[Senera] Autocolorus Gaphics Patar Desgra (CAO)
	1	This mode is best suited for printing publications that include photo images and graphics.
		Advanced Settings
Vew Settings	Manual Grayscale Settings	Grayscale Settings
		About Restore Defaults
		OK Cencel Help

ietting kein	Contents
Tendering Flate	24 BPP
1-Beau	Dollars 1
Conter Slave	ûn
una ura key	Dio Inter Hugan
dvanced Snoothing	Smooth 1
Tensity Fine Adjustment	0 (Standard)
Julput Adjustment Mode	On
INE Save:	
h	•

[Objective] OPrinting According to the Document Type

Selects the document type for which you want to enable the save toner setting.

[Advanced Settings]

Displays a screen with a list of advanced settings. Click [Toner Save] and select [On] from the drop-down list at the bottom of the screen.

NOTE:

- You can specify whether to enable the save toner setting for each document type. Specify the save toner setting for each document type listed in [Objective].
- In the [Advanced Settings] screen, you can specify various print settings other than [Toner Save] settings. For more information about the settings, click [Help] on the printer driver screen.

LINKS

Combining and Printing Multiple Documents



By using Canon PageComposer, you can combine multiple documents into one print job and print the job with specified print settings. For example, this function enables you to combine documents made with different applications and print all of the pages in the same paper size.

1 Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.

How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

2 Select this machine and click [Preferences] or [Properties].



3 Select [Edit and Preview] in [Output Method].

■ Click [OK] on the [Information] pop-up screen ► Click [OK] in the printer driver screen.

🖶 Printing Preferences
Basic Settings Page Setup Rnishing Paper Source Quality
Prolie: • Default Settings • Add(1) Edit(2)
Dulput Method:
☐ Page Soc: Capeel(2) 1 (2) (11o 500) ▲ ▲ ● Overtation ● Capeel(2) 1 (2) (11o 500) ▲ ● Output Soe: ▲ ● Petrat ▲ ● Landscape Information ● ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■
The output method will be switched to [Edit and Preview].
Vew Setings Reduce Defaults
OK Cancel Help

4 Click [Print] or [OK].

🖶 Print	
General	
Select Plinter	
帰らAdd Printer 開てanon LBP6030/6040/5018L 曲Fax	Hicrosoft XPS Document
*	•
Statute: Ready Location: Convent:	Print to file Preferences
Page Range	
Al O Selection Current Page	Number of copies: 1 😤
Pages: 1-65535 Enter ether a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12	Colute 11 22 33
Poge range. For consequence is a	t Cancel Apply

Canon PageComposer starts. Printing does not start in this step.



The documents are added in Canon PageComposer.

医骨髓 医胆	电图思群	I+ IP IL	
Document Name	Pages	Layout Informati. Comme	ints
Document 1.tf	1	1 on 1	
Document 2.rtf	1	1 on 1	
Document 3.rtf	1	1 on 1	

6 From the [Document Name] list, select the documents to combine, and click

To select multiple documents, click the documents while holding down the [SHIFT] key or [CTRL] key.

🖞 Canon PageComposer - Canon LBP0030/0040/0018L - User01				
File Edit Moveto Help	_			
427 B 🗘	2) IF B	P L		
Document Name	Pages	Layout Informati. Comments		
Document 1.tf	1	1 on 1		
Document 2.rtf	1	1 00 1		
Document 3.rtf	1	1 on 1		
1				

7 Change the settings as necessary, and click [Combine].

The documents selected in step 6 are combined.

Combine				
Document Name:	Combined Documents 1			
Sheets: 2	MA		Debte	a
Document List Pr	ist Settings			e
Copies:	1 🖈 [1 to 999]	Output Size Consistency:	A4 •	
Print Style:	1-Sided Printing	Cayout Consistency:	2 on 1 •	ſ.
		Page Order		-
		Print Next Document from	Same Side 🔹	
			Detalo	C
		Restore Defaults	Combine Cancel Help	

[Print Preview]

Displays a preview of the document to be printed.

[Document List]/[Print Settings]

Click the [Document List] tab to display the documents added in steps 1 to 4. You can remove documents by selecting them in the list and clicking [Delete from List].

Document Name	Pages	Layout Information	
Document 1.vt	1	2 on 1	
Document 2 nt		2 on 1	12
Document 3./f	i	2 on 1	50 20 32
			Delete from Lid

Click the [Print Settings] tab to display the screen for specifying print settings such as the number of copies. The settings specified here are applied to the whole print job.

0 Document Li	Print Settings		Pint Preview
Copies:	1 (1 to 300)	Output Size Consistency:	A4 🗸
Print Style:	1-Sided Printing	Layout Consistency:	2 on 1 🔹
		Page Order	Left to Right -
		Print Need Document from	Same Side -
			Detailo
-		Restore Defaults	Combine Cancel Help

NOTE:

For more information, click [Help] on the Canon PageComposer screen.

ឲ [Details]

Displays the print settings screen of the printer driver. There are fewer settings available than when using the ordinary printing method.

m 3 In the [Document Name] list, select the combined-document print job you want to print, and click \equiv .



Printing starts.

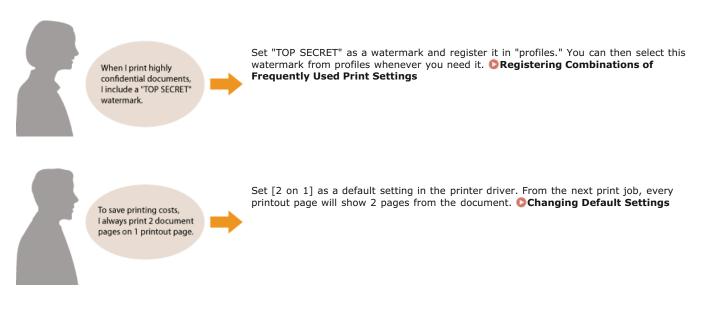
To cancel printing, see Canceling Print Jobs.

LINKS

Basic Print OperationsPrinting Multiple Pages Onto One Sheet

Configuring Print Settings to Your Needs

You can register combinations of settings as "profiles" to suit your different printing objectives. Also, you can register the settings that you frequently use as the default settings. Once the default settings are registered, they are displayed automatically in the printer driver screen, and you can skip the operations to specify them and proceed to printing immediately.



Registering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings

Specifying combinations of settings such as "1-sided landscape orientation on A4 size paper in save toner mode" every time you print is time consuming. If you register your frequently used combinations of print settings as "profiles," you can specify print settings simply by selecting one of the profiles from the list. This section explains how to register profiles and how to print using profiles.

Registering a Profile Selecting a Profile

Registering a Profile

1 Change the settings that you want to register as a profile, and click [Add].

Make print settings as required on the [Basic Settings], [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], and [Quality] tabs. OVarious **Print Settings**

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Set	up Rnishing Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	🖋 «Change» Default Settings	- Add(1) Edt(2)
Output Method:	🚔 Pilet	•
0.0	Page Size	Copies(Q): 1 0 999
	A4	 Overtation



2 Enter a profile name in [Name], select an icon, and then click [OK].

- As necessary, enter comments about the profile in [Comment].
- Olick [View Settings] to see the settings that will be registered.



NOTE

Editing a profile

By clicking [Edit] on the right side of [Profile] on the screen shown in step 1, you can change the name, icon, or comment of the profiles you have previously registered. However, you cannot edit the pre-registered profiles.

Selecting a Profile

Simply select the profile that suits your objective, and click [OK].

Printing Preferences		
Basic Settings Page Setup Rnishing	Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	Sample - Add(1)	
Output Method: 🚊 P	int -	
	Page Son: Mat • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Potst A © Landcope Pege Order: Left to Rigit
Vew Settings Restore Defaults		
		OK Cencel Help

NOTE

Changing the settings of the currently selected profile

You can change the settings of the currently selected profile. In addition, the changed settings can be registered as another profile.

LINKS

Basic Print OperationsChanging Default Settings

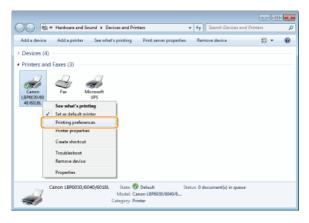
Changing Default Settings

The default settings are the settings that are first displayed whenever you open the print settings screen of the printer driver. You can change these settings to the settings that you use most often. For example, if you always want to print 2 document pages on each printout page, set [2 on 1] as the default page layout setting. From the next time that you open the printer driver screen, the setting will always be [2 on 1], eliminating the need to change this setting every time you make prints.

IMPORTANT

To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.

- **Open the printer folder.** Open the Printer Folder
- 2 Right-click the icon of the machine and then click [Printing preferences].



- 3 Change the settings on the printing preferences screen, and click [OK].
 - Make print settings as required on the [Basic Settings], [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], and [Quality] tabs. Various Print Settings

Basic Settings Page Setup Rnir	hing Paper Source Quality	
Profile:	Change> Default Settings	- Add(1) Edit(2)
Output Method:	g Pilet	•
9	Page Size	Copies(Q): 1 1 [1 to 999]
	* A4	Orientation
	Output Stee:	A @ Potrat A C Landscape
1 2	Match Page Size Page Layout:	Page Order:
	2 2 on 1	- Left to Right -
	Briding Location:	
	Long Edge [Top]	Guter
	Finishing:	
A4 [Scaling: Auto]	or in the second	
Vew Settings		
Restore Defaults		
_		
		OK Cancel Apply Help

LINKS

Basic Print Operations

Registering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings

Network LBP6030w

This machine has been designed for flexibility of use across a variety of environments. In addition to basic network features, it includes advanced network technologies. Make the required settings depending on your network environment. Do not worry if you are not a network expert, because the machine has also been designed for convenience and ease of use. Relax and proceed with the network setup one step at a time.

Connecting to a Computer/Viewing the Machine's Network Settings



Connecting to a Network

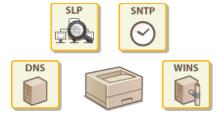


OViewing Network Settings





Configuring for Printing from a Computer



Customizing the Machine for a More Convenient Network Experience

Configuring the Machine for Your Network Environment

Connecting to a Network LBP6030w

You can connect the machine to a wireless LAN network, and you can use a unique IP address within the network. For specific IP address settings, contact your Internet service provider or network administrator.



IMPORTANT

If the machine is connected to an unsecured network, your personal information might be leaked to a third party.

NOTE

- The machine does not come with a router. Have a router ready as necessary.
- If you are not sure whether your router supports wireless LAN, see the instruction manual provided with the router, or contact the manufacturer.

Before You Start

Follow these steps to connect the machine to a network.



Check the device and network settings.

- Have the computer and the router been connected properly? For more information, see the instruction manuals for the devices you are using, or contact the device manufacturers.
- Make sure that the network settings have been completed on the computer. If the network has not been set up properly, you will not be able to use the machine on the network, even if you perform the rest of the procedure below.

NOTE:

To check the machine's MAC address ^OViewing Network Settings



Connect to the wireless LAN. Connecting to a Wireless LAN

_	
•	
•	



Set the IP address as necessary.

This step is required when you want to assign a specific IP address to the machine or change the dynamic IP addressing protocol from the default DHCP.

Setting IP Addresses

Connecting to a Wireless LAN LBP6030w

Wireless routers (or access points) connect the machine to a computer via radio waves. If your wireless router is equipped with Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS), you can configure your network with a simple button push. If your networking devices do not support automatic configuration, or if you want to specify authentication and encryption settings in detail, you need to set up the connection manually. To make wireless settings for this machine, use the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool from your computer. Make sure that your computer is correctly connected to the network.



IMPORTANT

Log on as an administrator

To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.

Risk of information leak

Use wireless LAN connection at your own discretion and at your own risk. If the machine is connected to an unsecured network, your personal information might be leaked to a third party because radio waves used in wireless communication can go anywhere nearby, even beyond walls.

Wireless LAN security standards

This machine supports the following wireless LAN security standards. For the wireless security compatibility of your wireless router, see the instruction manual or contact the manufacturer.

- 128 (104)/64 (40) bit WEP
- WPA-PSK (TKIP/AES-CCMP)
- WPA2-PSK (TKIP/AES-CCMP)

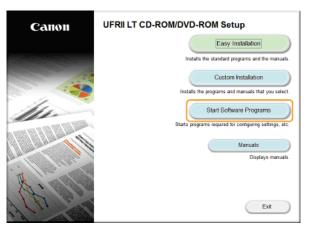
NOTE

Required devices for wireless LAN connection

- The machine does not come with a wireless router. Have the router ready as necessary.
- The wireless router must conform to the IEEE 802.11b/g/n standards and be able to communicate in the 2.4 GHz band. For more information, see the instruction manual for your wireless router or contact the manufacturer.

Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.

Click [Start Software Programs].

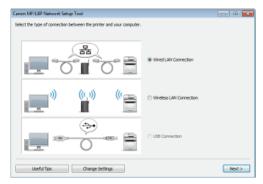


- If the above screen does not appear ODisplaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen
- If [AutoPlay] is displayed, click [Run MInst.exe].

3 Click [Start] for [MF/LBP Network Setup Tool].



4 Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the wireless LAN settings.



NOTE:

If there is something you do not understand

Click [Useful Tips] at the bottom left of the screen to display troubleshooting tips.

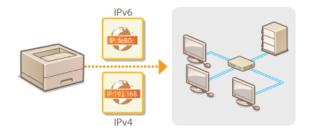


LINKS

Connecting to a Network

Setting IP Addresses LBP6030w

Connecting the machine to a network requires an IP address that is unique in that network. There are two types of IP addresses: IPv4 and IPv6. Use the type required by your network environment. Note that before you can use an IPv6 address, you first need to properly configure an IPv4 address.



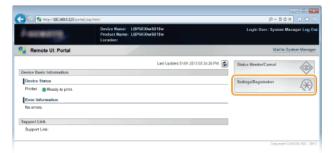
Setting IPv4 Address LBP6030w



The machine's IPv4 address can be either assigned automatically by a dynamic IP addressing protocol, such as DHCP, or entered manually.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Network Settings] ▶ [TCP/IP Settings].

C 0 2 http://132.168.0.215/m_1 LUPE030wr5011	etwork/ster/ w/LUPS009w8010w/		P = E C X () () To Portel Login User: System Manager Log
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manag
Preferences = Display Settings = Timer Settings	SettingsRegistration. System W Network Settings	aragement Seltings. Network Settings	
dig uternet Maintenance © Unity Mane System Management Settings © System Management © System Management © Network Settings © Instacto Setting Promaten	TCAVE Settings	Ph-1 Settings III-U Settings UKD Settings UKD Verit Settings Net Discher Settings Net Discher Settings Physicial Settings Settings Settings KHTP Settings Milliam Exercise Settings	

4 Click [Edit] in [IPv4 Settings].



5 Set the IP address.

C 10 102 102 100 0 215 m	stand hind		P-86X 0.0
	w/LIP6030w6010w7	To Portal 1	Login User: System Manager Log Ox
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
elerences	Settings/Registration System Manager	nent Settings: Network Settings > TCP/IP Set	ings > Edit IPv4 Settings
Display Settings	Edit IPv4 Settings	3	
© Timer Settings djustmentMaintenance	Change the following settings. Changes will be effective after the mi	sin power is turned OFF and ON.	
 Utility Meno stem Management Settings 			OK. Cancel
II System Management	IP Address Settings		
Security Settings Network Settings	Auto Acquire		
Initialize Setting Information	'[Auto Acquire] will be Off if [Select Pr		
	Select Protocol Auto IP:	Of m	
	IP Address:	192.168.0.215	
	Subnet Mask:	268 266 255 D	
	Gateway Address:	0.000	
	DNS Sottings		
	Primary DNS Server Address:	0.0.0	
	Secondary DNS Server Address:	0.0.0.0	
	Host Name:	Ceron2bas73	

Automatically assigning an IP address

1 In the [Select Protocol] list, select [DHCP], [BOOTP], or [RARP].

NOTE:

If you do not want to use DHCP/BOOTP/RARP to assign an IP address automatically

Select [Off]. If you select the [DHCP], [BOOTP], or [RARP] protocol when these services are unavailable, the machine will waste time and communications resources searching the network for these services.

2 Check that [Auto IP] is set to [On].

If [Off] is selected, change the setting to [On].

NOTE:

Even if Auto IP is enabled, IP addresses assigned via DHCP/BOOTP/RARP override an address obtained via Auto IP.

Manually entering an IP address

- **1** Select [Off] for [Select Protocol] and [Auto IP].
- 2 Set the [IP Address], [Subnet Mask], and [Gateway Address] fields.

6 Click [ОК].

Restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

NOTE

Checking whether the settings are correct

Make sure that the Remote UI screen can be displayed with your computer. OStarting the Remote UI

If you change the IP address after installing the printer driver

If you are using an MFNP port, and the machine and the computer are in the same subnet, then the connection will be maintained. You do not need to add a new port. If you are using a standard TCP/IP port, then you need to add a new port. **Configuring Printer Ports**

* If you are not sure which type of port you are using, see [] Checking the Printer Port.

LINKS

Setting IPv6 Addresses
 Viewing Network Settings
 Configuring WINS

Setting IPv6 Addresses LBP6030w



Use the Remote UI to set IPv6 addresses. Before setting IPv6 addresses, make sure that the IPv4 address has been set correctly (**Viewing Network Settings**). You can register up to nine of the following IPv6 addresses.

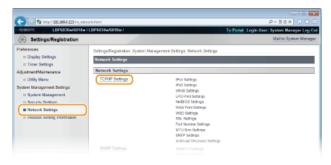
Туре	Maximum number available	Description	
Link-local address	1	An address that is valid only within a subnet or link and cannot be used to communicate with devices beyond a router. A link-local address is set automatically when the IPv6 function of the machine is enabled.	
Manual address	1	An address that is entered manually. Specify the prefix length and default router address.	
Stateless address	6	An address that is generated automatically using the MAC address of the machine and a network prefix that is advertised by the router. Stateless addresses are discarded when the machine is restarted (or turned ON).	
Stateful address	1	An address obtained from a DHCP server using DHCPv6.	

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

hanang,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030w/5019w LBP5030w/5019w	Login Usor: System Manager Log O
Remote UI: Portal			Nail to System Manage
		Last Updated 01/01 2015 00:34:26 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
Nevice Basic Information			V
Device Status			SettingaRegistration
Printer: Roady to print.			470
Error Information			
No errore.			
iepport Link			
Support Link:			

3 Click [Network Settings] ▶ [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Click [Edit] in [IPv6 Settings].

			0.5 2
C C C R Mag // 182.068.0.215 /m, net	work_topip.html		Prick A C
	DHCP Option Settings		
	Acquire Host Name:	On	
	DNS Dynamic Update:	017	
	IPv6 Settings		
			Ed.
	P Address Settings		
	Use Pv6:	08	
	WINS Settings		
			Edt.
	WINS Resolution	08	
	LPD Print Settings		
			Eas-

5

Select the [Use IPv6] check box and configure the required settings.

storn Management		
ecurity Setlings	IP Address Settings	
etucrk Settings	Use Pv6	
italize Setting Information	Link-Local Address	0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000
	Prefix Length:	0
	R Statoloss Addross	
	Stateless Address 1:	0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000
	Prefix Length 1:	0
	Stateless Address 2:	0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000
	Prefix Longth 2:	0
	Stateless Address 3:	0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000
	Prefix Length 3:	0
	Stateless Address 4:	0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000
	Prefix Length 4:	0
	Stateless Address 5:	0000-0000-0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
	Prefix Length 5:	
	Stateless Address 6:	0000.0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
	Prefix Length 6:	0
	 Use Manual Address 	
	IP Address:	000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
	Prefix Length:	64 (0-120)
	Default Router Address:	0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
	11 Use DHCPv6	
	State M Address	0000-0000-0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
	Prefix Length:	0
	DNS Settings	
	Primary DNS Server Address	0000-0000-0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
	Secondary DNS Server Address:	0000-0000 0000 0000-0000 0000 0000
	2 Use Same Host Name/Donain	

[Use IPv6]

Select the check box to use IPv6 on the machine. Clear the check box if you do not want to use IPv6.

[Stateless Address]

Check to use stateless addresses. Clear the check box if you do not want to use stateless addresses.

[Use Manual Address]

When you want to enter an IPv6 address manually, select the check box and enter values in the [IP Address], [Prefix Length], and [Default Router Address] text boxes. Clear the check box if you do not want to enter a manual address.

[IP Address]

Enter an IPv6 address. Addresses that start with "ff" (multicast addresses) and the loopback address (::1) cannot be entered.

[Prefix Length]

Enter the length (number of bits) of the network portion of the address.

[Default Router Address]

Specify the default router address, as necessary. Addresses that start with "ff" (multicast addresses) and the loopback address (::1) cannot be entered.

[Use DHCPv6]

Select the check box to use the stateful address. Clear the check box if you do not want to use the stateful address.

6 Click [OK].

LIP6030w/6010w	LEP5030w/6010w/	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log 0
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manage
Preferences	Settings/Registration System Ma	nagement Settings. Network Settings > TCP/IP Settings > Edit IPv6 Settings
Display Settings Timer Settings	Edit IPv6 Settings	
a Triter Setangs Adjustment/Maintenance III Utility Menu System Management Settings	Change the following settings. Changes will be effective after t	the main power is turned OFF and ON.
System Management	IP Address Settings	
 Socurity Settings Network Settings Initialize Setting Information 	Use IPv6 Link-Local Address: Photo: Length: IVI Stateless Address	0000-3000 0000-3000 0000-3000 0000-3000
	Stateless Address 1	0000.0000.0000.0002.0000.0000.0000
	Profix Longth 1:	0

Restart the machine.

Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

NOTE

Checking whether the settings are correct

Make sure that the Remote UI screen can be displayed with your computer by using the IPv6 address of the machine. Starting the Remote UI

If you change IP addresses after installing the printer driver

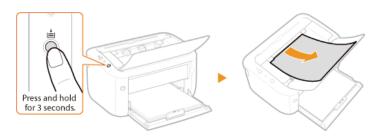
You need to add a new port. CConfiguring Printer Ports

LINKS

Setting IPv4 AddressViewing Network Settings

Viewing Network Settings LBP6030w

Press this machine's 🛓 (Paper) key and hold it down for 3 seconds to print a partial list of network settings. This allows you to check IPv4 settings, the MAC address, and wireless LAN settings. The setting list is formatted to print on A4 size paper. Before printing, load A4 size paper in the multi-purpose tray. OLoading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray



Output example:

LBP6030w/6018w		

	sas User Data List see	

Controller ROM Version		
Main Controller		
Boot ROM		
Language	a	
DCON	0.00	
*****************	fireless LAN Error Information	
	No errors. (01)	

1.Product Information		
1.Product Information Product Name	LBP8030#/6018w	
	LBP8030#/6018#	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settings	LBP8030#/6018#	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settings	LBP8030#/6015#	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settings IPv4 Settings Auto Obtain Select Protocol	off	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settings IPv4 Settings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP	off off off	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settings IPv4 Settings Auto Dtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address	Off Off 192.168.0.215	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settines TPV4 Settings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subnet Mask	Off Off 192.168.0.215 255.255.0	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settings IPv4 Settings Auto Dtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address	Off Off 192.168.0.215	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settines TPV4 Settings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subnet Mask	Off Off 192.168.0.215 255.255.0	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP Settings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subnet Mask Gateway Address	Off Off 192.168.0.215 255.255.0	
Product Name 2.TCP/ID Softings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subnet Mask Gateway Address 3.Wireless LAN Settings	Off Off 192.168.0.215 255.255.0	
Product Name 2.TCP/ID Settings IP4 Settings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subnet Mask Gateway Address 3.Wireless LAN Settings MAC Address SSID Settings Security	Off Off 192.168.0.215 255.255.0	
Product Name 2.TCP/ID Softings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subbet Mask Gateway Address 3.Wireless LAN Settings MAC Address SSID Settings SSELTS Security WFA/WFA2-PSK Settings	0ff 0ff 0ff 192.165.0.215 253.253.255.0 0.0.0.0	
Product Name 2.TCP/IP.Settines IP4 Settines Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subnet Mask Gateway Address S.Wireless LAN Settings WAA Address SSID Settings Security WFA/WFAZ-PSK Settings Encryption for WFA/WFAZ	Off Off 192.168.0.215 255.255.255.0 0.0.0.0 WPA/WPA2-P5K Auto	
Product Name 2.TCP/ID Softings Auto Obtain Select Protocol Auto IP IP Address Subbet Mask Gateway Address 3.Wireless LAN Settings MAC Address SSID Settings SSELTS Security WFA/WFA2-PSK Settings	0ff 0ff 0ff 192.165.0.215 253.253.255.0 0.0.0.0	

6 IPv4 Settings

Lists IPv4 settings.

Auto Obtain

Displays whether the IP address is assigned automatically by a protocol such as DHCP. "On" is displayed if automatic addressing is enabled.

Select Protocol

Displays the protocol used to assign the IP address automatically.

Auto IP

Displays whether Auto IP is enabled or disabled.

IP Address

Displays the IP address.

Subnet Mask

Displays the subnet mask.

Gateway Address

Displays the gateway address.

NOTE:

- The IP address is not correctly configured if it is displayed as "0.0.0.0".
- Connecting the machine to multiple switching hubs or bridges for redundancy may result in a connection failure even when the IP address is correctly configured. This problem can be solved by setting a certain interval before the machine starts communicating. **Osetting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network**

(i) Wireless LAN Settings

Displays MAC address and wireless LAN settings.

MAC Address

Displays the MAC address.

SSID Settings

Displays SSID settings.

Security

Displays the currently applied security settings. If the security settings have not been configured, "None" is displayed.

Wireless LAN Status

Displays the connection status (signal strength) of the wireless LAN. If the machine is not connected, "Inactive" or "Disconnected" is displayed.

NOTE

Note that you cannot check IPv6 settings and some other network settings on this setting list. If you want to check all network settings, print them by selecting [Network Status Print] in the Printer Status Window. **Printing Setting Lists**

LINKS

Connecting to a Wireless LAN Setting IPv4 Address

Configuring for Printing from a Computer LBP6030w

When using the machine as a network printer, you can configure the protocols and ports used for printing. Before starting, make sure that you have completed all basic preparations for printing (Printer Driver Installation Guide).



NOTE

- Printing protocols are rules for delivering document data created on a computer to the machine. You can select them according to the printing purpose or the network environment.
- Ports are gateways for passing printing data from a computer to the machine. Incorrect port settings are often the cause when documents cannot be printed from a network computer.

Setting Up a Print Server

By setting up a print server on the network, you can reduce the load on the computer that you print from. This also makes it possible to install printer drivers over the network, which saves the trouble of installing the drivers on each computer by using the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM. For information about how to set up a print server, see Printer Driver Installation Guide.

Configuring Printing Protocols and Web Services LBP6030w

The following explains how to configure printing protocols for printing documents from computers. The protocols supported by the machine are LPD, RAW, and WSD (Web Services on Devices).

NOTE

To change protocol port numbers **OChanging Port Numbers**

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

laments,	LIP6000w5019w LBP6000w5019w	Login User: System Manager Log (
Remote UI: Portal		Mail to System Manag
	Last Updated 01101 2015 03 34:20 PM	Status Monitos/Cancel
Jevice Basic Information		V
Device Status		SettinguRegistration
Printet: Roady to print.		470
Error Information		
No errore.		
Sepport Link		
Support Link:		

3 Click [Network Settings] ▶ [TCP/IP Settings].

Contraction for the provided and the pro	reduktori LILIPGODW/6010w.I		P - E C X P - E C X To Portal Legin User: System Manager Leg Ou Mail to System Manager
Preference = Drughay Selfings = Trine: Selfings AdjustreatMaintravace = Urbity Mee System Management = Serverk Verleve = Network Selfings = mented Selfing Promotest	Network Settings Herwork Settings TCPAP Settings	anagement Settings IPV-1 Sett	
	SMMP Settings		

4 Configure the printing protocols.

Configuring LPD or RAW

1 Click [Edit] in [LPD Print Settings] or [RAW Print Settings].

-			
C R http://182.088.0.215/m, network, tcpip.html			0 0 0 ×55-9
	WINS Resolution:	01	*
	LPD Print Settings		
			EM.
	Use LPD Printing:	On	
	NetBIOS Settings		
			Edt
	NetBIOS Nome:		
	Workgroup Name		
	RAW Print Sottings		
			E41.
	Use RAW Printing:	On	
	WSD Settlegs		

2 Configure the settings as necessary.

C- 10 10 http://182.088.0.215/m.ne	turnik kul mit html		P-16X 0 0
	v (LIPGDIWG018w)	To Postal La	igin User: System Manager Log Out Mail to System Manager
Preferences Display Settings Trave Settings Adjustreacharace UBIS More System Narrayent Settings System Narrayent Settings System Settings Security Settings Instruct Settin	Edit LPD Print Settings Change the following settings.	proved Sellings, Network Sellings > TCPNP Sellings man power is fumed CPF and CNL	> Edd UPD Prot Sellings OK Cancel
	_		Dopyright OANON INC. 2013

[Use LPD Printing]

Select the check box to print using LPD. Clear the check box if you do not want to use LPD printing.

[Use RAW Printing]

Select the check box to print using RAW. Clear the check box if you do not want to use RAW printing.

3 Click [OK].

Configuring WSD

1 Click [Edit] in [WSD Settings].

			P-10 X
🗧 💿 🔞 http://182.068.0.215/m_netv	rork, topip html		P-BdX 0 00
	Use RAW Printing:	On	
	WSD Settings		Est.
	Use WSD Printing:	On	
	Use WSD Browsing	On	
	Use Multicast Discovery:	On	
	SSI. Settings		
			Key and Certificate
	Key and Certificate Settings	Not set.	
	Functions that use SSL		
	Remote UI		
	Multicast Discovery Settings		

2 Configure the settings as necessary.

C a http://132.0684.225/m.setwork.wod.editited	P-16X 0 0 0
LIPEODerSoldwiso	System Manager Log Out
() Settings/Registration	Mail to Spalarn Manager
Parkencess Selfrage/Registration System Management Selfrage TCP/IPS	D Settings

[Use WSD Printing]

Select the check box to print using WSD. Clear the check box if you do not want to use WSD printing.

[Use WSD Browsing]

Select the check box to obtain information about the machine from a computer via WSD. This check box is selected automatically when the [Use WSD Printing] check box is selected.

[Use Multicast Discovery]

Select the check box to set the machine to reply to multicast discovery messages. If the check box is cleared, the machine stays in sleep mode even when it receives a multicast discovery message from the network.



Restart the machine.

Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

NOTE

Setting up WSD network devices on Windows Vista/7/8

Install the printer driver according to the procedure using WSD ports described in the Printer Driver Installation Guide.

LINKS

Configuring Printer Ports

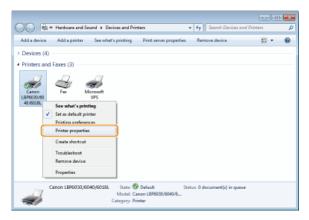
Configuring Printer Ports LBP6030w

Printing errors can occur when the print protocol settings of the machine have been changed, or when a printer has been added via the Windows printer folder. These errors are typically caused by incorrect printer port settings, for example when a computer specifies an incorrect printer port number or type in the printer driver. To fix this type of problem, configure the printer port settings on the computer.

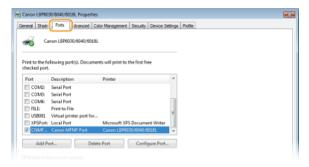
IMPORTANT

To perform the following procedure, log on to your computer with an administrator account.

- **Open the printer folder.** Open the Printer Folder
- 2 Right-click the icon of the machine and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].



3 Click the [Ports] tab and configure the required settings.



Adding a port

When an incorrect port was selected while installing a printer driver from the Windows printer folder, add a new port. There are two types of port: "MFNP Port" and "Standard TCP/IP Port." Select the port type according to your environment.

MFNP Port	This is a port that allows the IP address of the machine to be detected automatically. Even if the IP address of the machine is changed, the connection is maintained, provided that the machine and the computer are in the same subnet. You do not need to add a new port every time the IP address is changed. If you are using the machine in an IPv4 environment, you should normally select this type of port.
(only for IPv4	IMPORTANT:
environment)	You can add an MFNP port only when you installed the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM, or when you downloaded and installed the printer driver from the Canon website.
Standard TCP/IP Port	This is a standard Windows port. When you use this type of port, you need to add a new port every time that the IP address of the machine is changed. Select this type of port when you are using the machine in an IPv6 environment and when you cannot add an MFNP port.

Adding an MFNP port 🗾

- 1 Click [Add Port].
- 2 Select [Canon MFNP Port] in [Available port types] and click [New Port].



3 Select [Auto Detect] and select the machine when it is detected, and then click [Next].



NOTE:

If the machine is not detected

Click [Refresh]. If the problem persists, select [IP address] or [MAC address], enter the IP address or MAC address of the machine (**Viewing Network Settings**) and then click [Next].

	Loolect (P address) or (MAC address) in the required information. If you refeat (Auto the list
P address MAC address	192 . 160 . 0 . 215
Auto Detect Nodel	NAC address IP address
	Stop Refresh
Help	Next> Cancel

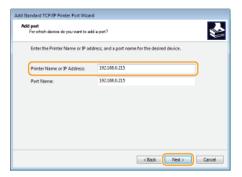
- 4 Click [Add] > [Finish].
- 5 Click [Close].

Adding a standard TCP/IP port 🗾

- 1 Click [Add Port].
- 2 Select [Standard TCP/IP Port] in [Available port types] and click [New Port].

Printer Ports	
Available port types:	
Canon MFNP Port	
Standard TCP/IP Port	
New Port Type	New Port Cancel

- **3** Click [Next].
- 4 Enter the IP address or the DNS name of the machine, and click [Next].
 The [Port Name] is entered automatically. If necessary, you can change it.



NOTE:

When the next screen is displayed, follow the instructions on the screen.

	formation required ad not be identified.	1
The device is not	found on the network. Be sure that:	
. The device is t		
2. The network is	connected. properly configured.	
	n the previous page is correct.	
 The address of Yyou think the ar 	n the previous page is correct. Idress is not correct, click Back to return to the previo Im another search on the network. If you are sure th	
 The address of You think the are address and performed. 	n the previous page is correct. Idress is not correct, click Back to return to the previo Im another search on the network. If you are sure th	
 The address of you think the a address and parford device type below 	n the previous page is correct. Idress is not correct, click Back to return to the previo Im another search on the network. If you are sure th	

* When you select the [Device Type], select [Canon Network Printing Device with P9100] under [Standard].

5 Click [Finish].

6 Click [Close].

Changing the port type or number

If the printing protocol (LPD or RAW) has been changed on the machine side (**Configuring Printing Protocols and Web Services**) or the port number has been changed (**Changing Port Numbers**), the corresponding settings on the computer must also be configured. This operation is not needed for WSD ports.

MFNP port 🔽

- **1** Click [Configure Port].
- 2 Under [Protocol Type], select [RAW] or [LPR], and change the [Port Number].



3 Click [OK].

Standard TCP/IP port 🗾

- **1** Click [Configure Port].
- 2 Under [Protocol], select [Raw] or [LPR].
 - If you selected [Raw], change the [Port Number].
 - If you selected [LPR], enter "lp" in [Queue Name].

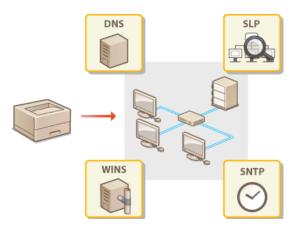
t Settings			
ort Name:		192.168.0.215	
rinter Name or IP Address:		192.168.0.215	
Protocol		⊖ LPR	
Rew Settings			
Port Number:	9100		
LPR Settings			
Queue Narra:	lø.		
LPR Byte Counting	g Enabled		
SNMP Status Enab	led		
Community Name:	public		
	0		
SNMP Device Index			

3 Click [OK].

4 Click [Close].

Configuring the Machine for Your Network Environment LBP6030w

The size and configuration of a network varies depending on the purpose of the network. This machine has been designed to be compatible with as many network configurations as possible, and it is equipped with a variety of network technologies. Consult your network administrator and set a configuration to suit your network environment.



Changing the Maximum Transmission Unit LBP6030w

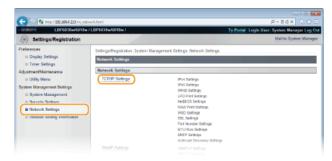
In most Ethernet networks, the maximum size of a packet that can be sent is 1500 bytes. A packet refers to a small chunk of data. The original data is divided into packets before being sent. The maximum transmission unit (MTU) may vary on each network. Change the settings of the machine as necessary. For more information, contact your network administrator.

Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. Starting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

interest.	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LIPPRODUCTO 19W LIPPRODUCTO 19W	Login Usor: System Manager Log
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Man
		Last Updated 01/01 2013 03 34:20 PM 👩	Status Monitos/Cancel
Jevice Basic Information			
Device Status			SettingaRegistration
Printer: Roady to print. 			474
Error Information			
No errora.			
iupport Link			
Support Link:			





4 Click [Edit] in [MTU Size Settings].

-			P-16X 010
C 8 http://182.068.0.215/im_netwo	rk, topip.html		P-EdX 0 0 0
	NAME.	9100	
	HTTP:	80	
	SNMP:	161	
	WSD Multicast Discovery	3/02	
	Multicast Discovery:	427	
	MTU Size Settings		
			Ed.
	MTU Size:	1500	
	SNTP Settings		
			Edt
	Line SNTP:	08	
	Check NTP Server		

5 Select the maximum packet size, and then click [OK].

LIP6030w/6013w	L8P6838w/6018w /	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log 0
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manage
Velecences = Display Settings = Trimer Settings IdjustmentMaintenance = Utility Mene System Management Settings	SetingsRepatries Edit MII See Setings Change for Storing addition Change will be effective after the main power is turned CFF and ON Changes will be effective after the main power is turned CFF and ON	
System Management Security Settings Network Settings	MTU Size Settings	

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

LINKS

Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network

Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network LBP6030w

When a network is designed with multiple switching hubs or bridges in order to provide redundant connectivity, it must have a mechanism to prevent packets from looping. One effective solution is to define the role of each switch port. However, communication may still be disrupted for a certain time immediately after you change the network, for example by adding a new device. If this type of problem occurs, set a wait time for connecting the machine to the network.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

lamang,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP6030wf618w LBP6030wf618w	Login Ucor: System Manager Log O
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Manag
		Last Updated 01/01 2015 03 34:20 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
Nevice Basic Information			
Device Status			Settingu Registration
Printet: Roady to print.			470
Error Information			
No orrani.			
iepport Link			
Support Link:			

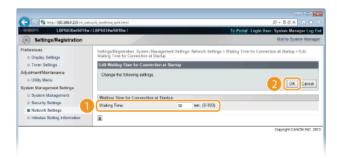
3 Click [Network Settings] ► [Waiting Time for Connection at Startup].

LIPCOLOWIGHT	W/LEP6838w/6018w/	To Portal	Login User: System Manager Log 0
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manage
references	Settings/Registration System Mana	gement Settings: Network Settings	
III Display Settings	Network Sottings		
Timer Settings	Network Settings		
djustment Maintenance			
 Utility Mensi 	TCP/IP Settings	Pv4 Settings Pv5 Settings	
ystem Management Settings		WINE Settings	
🗆 System Management		LPD Print Settings	
to Security Settings	-	NetBIC3 Settings	
B Network Settings		RAW Print Boltings	
C INCOLO DITATIO CONTRACT	<u>_</u>	WOD Settings 554, Settings	
		Part Number Settings	
		MTU film Settings	
		SNTP Sellings	
		Multicast Discovery Bellings	
	SMMP Settings	SNMPv1 Detings SNMPv3 Detings	
	Dedicated Port Settings	Orean yo bearings	
	Waiting Time for Connection at S	Startup	
	Wireless LAN Settings		

4 Click [Edit].



5 Enter the time to wait before beginning communication with the network, and then click [OK].



LINKS

Changing the Maximum Transmission Unit

Configuring DNS LBP6030w

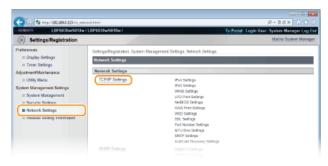
DNS (Domain Name System) provides a service for name resolution that associates a host (or domain) name with an IP address. Configure the DNS, mDNS, or DHCP option settings as necessary according to your network. Note that the procedures for configuring DNS are different for IPv4 and IPv6.



- 1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI
- 2 Click [Settings/Registration].

issents,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030w/6010w LBP5030w/6010w	Login t	leer: System Manager Log (
Remote UI: Portal				Mail to System Manag
		Last Updated 01/01 2013 00	34.20 PM 🔹 Bintus Monit	orCancel
evice Basic Information				V
Device Status			SellinguRog	etration
Printet: 🔵 Roady to print.				5
Error Information				
No errore.				
apport Link				
Support Link:				

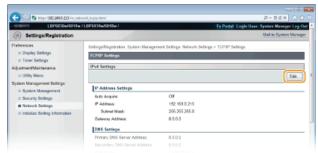
3 Click [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Configure the DNS settings.

Configuring IPv4 DNS settings

1 Click [Edit] in [IPv4 Settings].



2 Configure the IPv4 DNS settings.

C 2 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	d_ipsthind		0 🖸 🗊 × 5 8 - 9.
	Gateway Address:	0.0.0.0	•
	DNS Settings		
	Primary DNS Server Address:	0.0.0.0	
_	Secondary DNB Server Address:	0.0.0.0	
a	Host Name:	Canon2tee73	
	Domain Name:		
	ONS Dynamic Update		
	DNS Dynamic Update Interval:	24 Rr. (0-48)	
_	mDNS Settings		
b	Use mDNS		
	mDNS Name:	Canon LISP9030w/9018w	J
_	DHCP Option Settings		
	Acquire Host Name:		
-	DNS Dynamic Update		
	2		

[DNS Settings]

[Primary DNS Server Address]

Enter the IP address of the DNS server.

[Secondary DNS Server Address]

When there is a secondary DNS server, enter its IP address.

[Host Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the host name of the machine that is to be registered with the DNS server.

[Domain Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the name of the domain the machine belongs to (such as "example.com").

[DNS Dynamic Update]

Select the check box to automatically update the DNS records whenever the association between the machine's IP address and its host name changes (for example, in a DHCP environment). To specify the interval between updates, enter the time in hours in the [DNS Dynamic Update Interval] text box. Clear the check box if you do not want to use dynamic updating.

[mDNS Settings]

[Use mDNS]

Adopted by services such as Bonjour, mDNS (multicast DNS) is a protocol for associating a host name with an IP address without using DNS. Select the check box to enable mDNS and enter the mDNS name in the [mDNS Name] text box. Clear the check box if you do not want to use mDNS.

[DHCP Option Settings]

[Acquire Host Name]

Select the check box to enable Option 12 to obtain the host name from the DHCP server. Clear the check box if you do not want to use this function.

[DNS Dynamic Update]

Select the check box to enable Option 81 to dynamically update the DNS records through the DHCP server instead of through this machine. Clear the check box if you do not want to use this function.

3 Click [OK].

C 8 http://182.068.0.215/m.n	etwork, jpv4.html	0 🗠 🔿 🗙 585-9.
LUPG030w/6010	w/LEP5030w/6018w/	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences Display Settings Timer Settings Adjustmeth/laintenance Utility Management Settings	Edit IPv4 Settings Charge the following settings	Interpret Settings Melvols Settings > TCPIP Settings > Edit IPv6 Settings The man power a famed CFF and CN. (CK) Cancer
System Management Security Settings Network Settings Initialize Setting Information	IP Address Settings Auto Acquire 'Yauto Acquire] will be Off if [S Select Protocol	tect Protocol[and [Auto IP] are set to [OIP].
	Auto IP: IP Address:	0 F 192 168.0 215
	Subnet Mask:	

Configuring IPv6 DNS settings

1 Click [Edit] in [IPv6 Settings].

C C K Http://182.068.0.215/m, network	k, topip html		P-B6X A & B
	DHCP Option Settings		
	Acquire Host Name:	On	
	DNS Dynamic Update:	Off	
	IPv6 Settings		
			Ed.
	P Address Settings		
	Use IPv6:	08	
	WINS Settings		
			Edt.
	WINS Resolution	08	
	LPD Print Settings		
			Edt.

2 Configure the IPv6 DNS settings.

The [Use IPv6] check box must be selected to configure the settings. Setting IPv6 Addresses

C	A, (prő. html	P-26X 000
	Ube DHCPv6 Stateful Address: 0000-0000 2000 0000 0000 0000 Prefix Length: 0	
	DNS Settings	
	Primary DNS Server Address DDDD-0000 0000 0000 0000 0000	2000
	Secondary DNS Berver Address: 0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000.0000	1000
	Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IP+4	
_	Host Name: Cance3bae73	
(a)	Domain Name:	
	E DNS Dynamic Update	
	 Register Manual Address 	
	Register Stateful Address	
	Register Stateless Address DNS Dynamic Update Intervat: 24 Int. (0-48)	
	and syndrine operate antereas. 2.0 million (or we)	
	mDNS Settings	
6	Use mCNS	
•	Use Same mDN3 Name as IPv4 mDN3 Name Cases UBP030x 6018x	
	mENS Name: Canon LBP5030w5018w	

[DNS Settings]

[Primary DNS Server Address]

Enter the IP address of the DNS server. Addresses that start with "ff" (multicast addresses) and the loopback address (::1) cannot be entered.

[Secondary DNS Server Address]

When there is a secondary DNS server, enter its IP address. Addresses that start with "ff" (multicast addresses) and the loopback address (::1) cannot be entered.

[Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4]

Select the check box to use the same settings as in IPv4. The host name and domain name used in IPv4 will be set automatically after the machine restarts. Clear the check box if you want to use different settings from IPv4.

[Host Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the host name of the machine that is to be registered with the DNS server.

[Domain Name]

Enter up to 47 alphanumeric characters for the name of the domain the machine belongs to (such as "example.com").

[DNS Dynamic Update]

Select the check box to automatically update the DNS records whenever the association between the machine's IP address and its host name changes (for example, in a DHCP environment). To specify the addresses you want to register with the DNS server, select one or more of the check boxes for [Register Manual Address], [Register Stateful Address], and [Register Stateless Address]. To specify the interval between updates, enter the time in hours in the [DNS Dynamic Update Interval] text box. Clear the check box if you do not want to use dynamic updating.

[mDNS Settings]

[Use mDNS]

Adopted by services such as Bonjour, mDNS (multicast DNS) is a protocol for associating a host name with an IP address without using DNS. Select the check box to enable mDNS. Clear the check box if you do not want to use mDNS.

[Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4]

Select the check box to use the same settings as in IPv4. The mDNS name used in IPv4 will be set automatically after the machine restarts. Clear the check box and enter a name in [mDNS Name] if you want to use different settings from IPv4.

3 Click [OK].

rok, jor6.html	0 0 0 × 58-9
(LEP\$839w/6018w)	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
	Mail to System Manager
SettingsRegistration System Mar	agement Settings. Network Settings > TCP/IP Settings > Edit IPv6 Settings
Edit IPv6 Settings	
Change the following settings. Changes will be effective after t	te man power is turned OFF and ON.
IP Address Settings	
Use IPv6 Link-Local Address Pratix Length: Stateless Address 1: Pratix Length 1:	00000-3000 2000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000
	ILENGSSWOOTBWJ SettrgeliTegeliden System Ver Call Ifvik Settrge Charge Ric Marriege address Charges will be effective adler I II Address Settrage III Address Settrage III Address Settrage III Address Settrage III Address Settrage III Address Settrage IIII Address III Address III IIII Address III Address III Address III IIII Address III Ad

Restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

Setting IPv4 Address
Setting IPv6 Addresses
Viewing Network Settings

Configuring WINS LBP6030w

Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) is a name resolution service that associates a NetBIOS name (a computer or printer name in a NetBIOS network) with an IP address. To use WINS, a WINS server must be specified.

IMPORTANT

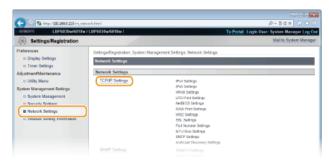
- To register this machine with a WINS server, a NetBIOS name and workgroup name must be set. OConfiguring NetBIOS
- This function is not available in an IPv6 environment.

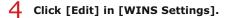
1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

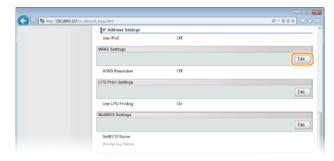
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

Legis Versi System Manager Leg Go Mai Io System Manager Josefa 21:01 2013 03 34:20 PM
_
oldeled 01:01 2013 03.34.28 PM 🝙 Status Monitor/Cancol
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Settings/Registration
SettinguRegistration

3 Click [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings].







5 Select the [WINS Resolution] check box and enter the required information.

C S http://182.068.0.215/m.m	twork_winz_edit.html	0.000 × 0.000 × 0.000
Settings/Registration	n / LUP6030w/5010w7	To Portal Login User: System Manaper Log On Mail to System Manaper
Preferences © Display Settings = Trace Settings Adjustment Maintenance = Utility Mana System Management Settings	Settings/Registration: System Variagement Set Edit WNRS Settings Change the Moving sottings. Changes the Moving sottings.	trigs: Network Settings > TGPAP Settings > Edit WINS Settings
 System Nazagement Socurity Settings Network Settings Initiatze Setting Information 	WINS Settinge WINS Resolution WINS Sense Address 0 Scope ID:	100
		Copyright CANON INC. 2013

[WINS Resolution]

Select the check box to use WINS for name resolution. When not using WINS, clear the check box.

[WINS Server Address]

Enter the IP address (IPv4) of the WINS server.

IMPORTANT:

If the IP address of the WINS server is obtained from a DHCP server, the obtained IP address overrides the IP address entered in the [WINS Server Address] text box.

[Scope ID] If the network is divided into several groups with scope IDs (identifiers for groups of devices in the network), enter up to 63 alphanumeric characters for the scope ID. Leave the text box blank if there is no scope ID set for your computer.

6 Click [OK].

7 Restart the machine.

Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

LINKS

Setting IPv4 Address

Configuring NetBIOS LBP6030w

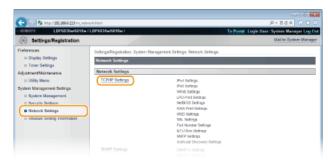
To register this machine with a WINS server, a NetBIOS name and workgroup name must be set.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. **Starting the Remote UI**

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

laments,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030w/5019w LBP5030w/5019w	Login User: System Manager Lo
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Man
		Last Updated 01/01 2013 00:34:20 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
Jevice Basic Information			6
Device Status			SettinguRegistration
Printet: Roady to print.			47
Error Information			
No errore.			
Sepport Link			
Support Link:			





4 Click [Edit] in [NetBIOS Settings].





LBP6030wr6013	w/LEPSEDEw/S018w/	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Mana
telerences □ Display Settings □ Timer Settings IdjustmentMaintenance □ Utility Mane justeen Management Settings	SettingsRegistration System Management Settin Edit Net/EDS Settings Change the following settings. Changes will be effective after the main power	rgs Network Settings > TCFVP Settings > Edit NetBIOS Settings is turned OFP and ON OK Cancel
System Management Settings System Management Socurity Settings Network Settings Initialize Setting Information	NetBIOS SetUnove NetBIOS Name: Workgroup Name:	

[NetBIOS Name]

Enter up to 15 alphanumeric characters for the NetBIOS name of the machine.

[Workgroup Name]

Enter up to 15 alphanumeric characters for the name of the workgroup that the machine belongs to.

IMPORTANT:

NetBIOS or workgroup names that start with an asterisk (*) cannot be registered with a WINS server.

6 Click [OK].

7 Restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

LINKS

Configuring WINS

Configuring SNTP LBP6030w



Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) enables you to adjust the system clock by using a time server on the network. When you use SNTP, the system checks the timer server periodically, so that the system clock is always accurate. The time is based on Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), so specify the time zone setting before configuring SNTP (**©Timer Settings**).

NOTE

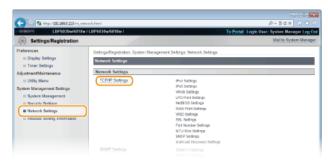
The SNTP of the machine supports both NTP (version 3) and SNTP (versions 3 and 4) servers.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

harman and	Device Name: LBP5030w/5019w Product Name: LBP5030w/5019w Location:	Login User: System Manager Log
Remote UI: Portal		Mail to System Mana
	Last Updated 01101 2013 00.34/26 P	Status Monitor/Cancel
levice Basic Information		www.
Device Status		Settinge/Registration
Printer: Roady to print.		47
Error Information		
No errore.		
apport Link		
Support Link:		

3 Click [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings].





3 (a) 82 http://182.068.0.21			P-16X 01
	NAME.	9100	
	HTTP:	00	
	SNMP:	161	
	WSD Multicast Discovery:	3402	
	Multicast Discovery:	427	
	MTU Size Settinge		
			641.
	MTU Size:	1500	
	SNTP Settings		
			Edit
	Use SNTP:	08	
	Check NTP Server		
	Check NTP Server		

5 Select the [Use SNTP] check box and enter the required information.

C (2 krai/1322680.215/m, ne	work_antp_edit/html				P-ECX 0 00
LIPEOJOWI60194	/LEPGIDIWG018w3			To Portel Login Use	: System Manager Log On
Settings/Registration					Mail to System Manager
Preferences = Display Settings = Triner Settings AdjustmentMaintenance = Uhilly Mene System Management Settings = System Management	Settings/Repairation System W Edit SNTEP Settings Change the following settings SNTEP Settings	aragement Sel	trgs Network Settings >	TCP/IP Setlings > Edit SP	VTP Settings OK Cancel
 Security Settings Network Settings Initialize Setting Information 	Use SNTP NTP Server Name: Poling Intervat	24	hours (1-48)		
					Copyright CANCIN INC. 2013

[Use SNTP]

Select the check box to use SNTP for synchronization. Clear the check box if you do not want to use this function.

[NTP Server Name]

Enter the IP address of the NTP or SNTP server. If a DNS server is available on the network, you can enter "<host name>.<domain name>" (FQDN) of up to 255 alphanumeric characters instead (example: "ntp.example.com").

[Polling Interval]

Enter an interval from 1 to 48 hours to specify how often to poll the time server.

6 Click [OK].

NOTE

Testing communication with the NTP/SNTP server

You can test whether the machine is communicating with the registered time server via SNTP. Click [Settings/Registration] [Network Settings] [TCP/IP Settings] to display [SNTP Settings], and then click [Check NTP Server]. If a proper connection has been established, the result is displayed as shown below. (Note that this operation only checks the connection. It does not adjust the system clock.)

On
ntp.example.com
24 hr.
OK

Synchronizing to the time set on the computer

You can notify the machine of the time set on your computer, and synchronize to that time. Make time notification settings in the Printer Status Window.

	Customice		Canon LBP00	30/6040/9018L	Cuttomize	
		09.00			E 4 €	00 01/01
2 Se	lect [Options]	🕨 [Pref	ferences (Admin	istrato	rs)]
Eb Ca	non LBP6030/6040/6018L	🕨 [Prei	ferences (Admin	istrato	rs)]
Eb Ca		🕨 [Pref	ferences (istrato	rs)]
Eb Ca	non LBP6030/6040/6018L Options Help	> [Pref	ferences (istrato	rs)]
Eb Ca	non LBP6030/6040/6018L Options Help Preferences (Lhers)		ferences (istrato -	rs)]
Eb Ca	non LEP6030/6040/6018L Options Help Preferences (Alem) Preferences (Administrator)		ferences (rs)]
Eb Ca	non LEP6030/6040/6018L Options Help Preferences (Administraton) Counter Information	> [Pref	ferences (rs)]
Eb Ca	non LEP6030/6040/6018L Options] Help Preferences (Heen). Preferences (Administrators) Counter Information Wireless LAN Status		ferences (rs)]

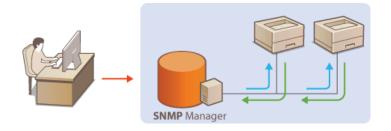
3 Select the [Notify the Printer of the Time] check box and click [OK].

Maximize Window When Displaye	au waxanan Jany

94 / 219

Monitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP LBP6030w

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a protocol for monitoring and controlling communication devices in a network by using a Management Information Base (MIB) database. The machine supports SNMPv1 and security-enhanced SNMPv3. They allow you to check the status of the machine from a computer when you print documents or use the Remote UI. You can enable either SNMPv1 or SNMPv3, or both at the same time. Specify the settings for each version to suit your network environment and the purpose of use.



SNMPv1

SNMPv1 uses data called a "community string" (in effect a kind of password) to define the scope of SNMP communication. Because this information is exposed to the network in plain text, your network will be vulnerable to attacks. If you want to ensure network security, disable SNMPv1 and use SNMPv3.

SNMPv3

With SNMPv3, you can implement network device management that is protected by robust security features. Use the Remote UI to make settings. Before starting, enable SSL (©Enabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI).

NOTE:

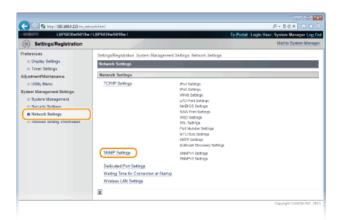
- The machine does not support the trap notification feature of SNMP.
- To change the SNMP port numbers OChanging Port Numbers
- SNMP management software enables you to configure, monitor, and control the machine remotely from the computer where the software is installed. For more information, see the instruction manuals for your management software.

Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

Click [Settings/Registration].

i santa a	LIPPRODUCTS 19W LIPPRODUCTS 19W	Login Usor: System Manager Log (
Remote UI: Portal		Mail to System Manag
	Last Updated 01/01 2013 03:34:20 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
Device Basic Information		
Device Status		SettinguRegistration
Printer: Roady to print. 		477
Error Information		
No errore.		
Sepport Link		
Support Link:		

Click [Network Settings] > [SNMP Settings].



4 Click [Edit].

LIPE030wr6013	w/LEP6839w/6018w/	To Portal Login	User: System Manager Log O
(Registration			Mail to System Manage
Preferences = Display Settings = Timer Settings AdjustmentMaintenance	Settings/Registration: System Managemen SNMP Settings	t Sellings Network Sellings > SNMP Sellings	Est.
Utility Mene System Management Settings System Management Security Settings Network Settings Initialize Setting Information	SMMPv1 Settings Use SNAFv1: Community Name 1: MB Access Permission 1: Community Name 2: MB Access Permission 2: Dedicated Community Settings:	On public Read Only Read Only Read Only	
	SNMPv3 Settings Use SNMPv3.	OF	

5 Specify SNMPv1 settings.

If you do not need to change SNMPv1 settings, proceed to the next step.

A			
C 8 ktp://182.068.0.215/m_netv			8 🗅 🕜 🔿 x 5 = - 9.
LIP6030wr6010wr	(LEP683Bw/5018w)		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preference Deplep Sellags Tree Sellags AdjustraetMaintenance UBN Mene System Management Sellags System Stanagement Secury Sellangs Noticet Sellags Intervet Sellags Intervet Sellags	Edit SAMD Serrings Change Vel Staving addings, Changes will be effective after the na SMMP/11 Sectings (2) Use SMMP/1 Community Name 1: MIB Access Permission 1:		p > SWAP Setings > Exit SWAP Setings N
	Community Name 2: MIB Access Permission 2:	Read Only as	
	Dedicated Community Settings.	 Off Read/Write Read Only 	
	SNMPv3 Settings		
	Use SNMEV3 To enable the [User Refings] and the [Dee Settings]. Printer Management Information Acc		e turned Ciri en the (Riemelle Lii Steffinge) page in (Security

[Use SNMPv1]

Select the check box to enable SNMPv1. You can specify the rest of the SNMPv1 settings only when this check box is selected.

[Community Name 1]/[Community Name 2]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the name of the community.

[MIB Access Permission 1]/[MIB Access Permission 2]

For each community, select [Read/Write] or [Read Only] for the access privileges to MIB objects.

[Read/Write]	Allows both viewing and changing the values of MIB objects.
[Read Only]	Allows only viewing the values of MIB objects.

[Dedicated Community Settings]

Dedicated Community is a preset community, intended exclusively for administrators using Canon software, such as imageWARE Enterprise Management Console. Select [Off], [Read/Write] or [Read Only] for access privileges to MIB objects.

[Off]	Do not use the Dedicated Community.
[Read/Write]	Allows the Dedicated Community to both view and change the values of MIB objects.
[Read Only]	Allows the Dedicated Community to only view MIB objects.

Specify SNMPv3 settings.

If you do not need to change SNMPv3 settings, proceed to the next step.

Use SNMPv3	
User Settings 1	
[2] Enable User	
User Name:	inter
MIB Access Permission	Haad.Witte +
Security Settings:	Authentication On/Encryption On -
Authentication Algorithm:	⊛ MD5 ⊖ \$HA1
SetiCharge Pasavord	
Authentication Password:	
Confirm:	
Encryption Algorithm	e DES AES
Set/Change Password	
Encryption Pasaword	
Confirm:	
Encryption Passwold Confirm	
Context Settings	
Context Name 1:	
Context Name 2:	

[Use SNMPv3]

Select the check box to enable SNMPv3. You can specify the rest of the SNMPv3 settings only when this check box is selected.

[Enable User]

Select the check box to enable [User Settings 1]/[User Settings 2]/[User Settings 3]. To disable user settings, clear the corresponding check box.

[User Name]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the user name.

[MIB Access Permission]

Select [Read/Write] or [Read Only] for access privileges to MIB objects.

[Read/Write]	Allows both viewing and changing the values of MIB objects.
[Read Only]	Allows only viewing the values of MIB objects.

[Security Settings]

Select [Authentication On/Encryption On], [Authentication On/Encryption Off], or [Authentication Off/Encryption Off] for the desired combination of authentication and encryption settings.

[Authentication Algorithm]

When [Security Settings] has been set to [Authentication On/Encryption On] or [Authentication On/Encryption Off], select [MD5] or [SHA1] as the authentication algorithm, according to your environment.

[Encryption Algorithm]

When [Security Settings] has been set to [Authentication On/Encryption On], select [DES] or [AES] as the encryption algorithm, according to your environment.

[Set/Change Password]

To set or change the password, select the check box and enter between 6 and 16 alphanumeric characters for the password in the [Authentication Password] or [Encryption Password] text box. For confirmation, enter the same password in the [Confirm] text box. Passwords can be set independently for authentication and encryption algorithms.

[Context Name 1]/[Context Name 2]/[Context Name 3]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for context names. Up to three context names can be registered.

Specify printer management information acquisition settings.

With SNMP, printer management information (such as printing protocols and printer ports) can be monitored and obtained regularly from a computer on the network.

IS Security Settings	Use SNMPv1	
Network Settings		
Initialize Setting Information	Community Name 1:	public
	MIB Access Permission 1:	Read Only a
	Community Name 2:	
	MIB Access Permission 2:	Read Only m
	Dedicated Community Settings:	⊖ Off ⊖ Read/Write ⊛ Read/Only
	SNMPv3 Settings	
	Use SNMPv3	
	*To enable the [User Settings] and the (Con Settings].	ted Settings), [Use 55.] must be turned On on the (Nemote UI Settings) page in (Security
	Printer Management Information Acq Acquire Printer Nanagement Inform	
	-	Copyright CANON INC. 2013

[Acquire Printer Management Information from Host]

Select the check box to enable monitoring of the printer management information of the machine via SNMP. To disable monitoring of the printer management information, clear the check box.

8 Click [OK].

C 8 http://182.068.0.215/inj.net			0 1 1 × 0 1 × 0
LIPEODwr6010w	rt.8P6838w/5018w3		To Portel Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	SettingsRegistration System Managem	ent Settings Network Settings	> SNMP Settings > Edit SNMP Settings
Display Settings	Edit SMMP Settings	3	
Timer Settings Adjustment/Maintenance Utility Mene System Management Settings	Change the following settings. Changes will be effective after the ma	in power is turned OFF and Of	(OK) Cancel
System Management	SNMPv1 Settings		
 Security Settings Network Settings 	Use SNMPv1		
I Initialize Setting Information	Community Name 1:	public	
	MIB Access Permission 1:	Read Only 💌	
	Community Name 2:		
	MIB Access Permission 2:	Read Only in	
		0.01	

9 Restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

NOTE

Disabling both SNMPv1 and SNMPv3

If both versions of SNMP are disabled, some of the functions of the machine become unavailable, such as obtaining machine information via the printer driver.

Enabling Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv3

If both versions of SNMP are enabled, it is recommended that MIB access permission in SNMPv1 be set to [Read Only]. MIB access permission can be set independently in SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 (and for each user in SNMPv3). Selecting [Read/Write] (full access permission) in SNMPv1 negates the robust security features that characterize SNMPv3 because most of the machine settings can then be controlled with SNMPv1.

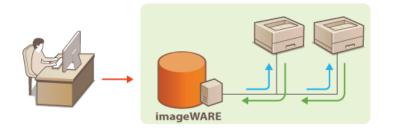
LINKS

CEnabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI

Configuring SLP Communication with imageWARE LBP6030w

You can use device management software such as imageWARE Enterprise Management Console^{*} to facilitate the collection and management of various information about networked devices. In an environment where such software is installed, information about device settings and errors is collected via a server on the network. If the machine is connected to an imageWARE network, imageWARE searches the network for the machine by using protocols such as Service Location Protocol (SLP). SLP settings can be specified via the Remote UI.

 * For more information about imageWARE, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



NOTE

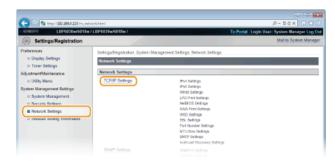
To change the SLP port number **Changing Port Numbers**

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

havened.	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030w5018w LBP5030w5018w	Login User: System Manager Log
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Mana
		Last Updated 01/01 2015 03:34:20 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
Jevice Basic Information			V
Device Status			Settingu/Registration
Printet: Roady to print.			47
Error Information			
No errora.			
Sepport Link			
Support Link:			

3 Click [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Click [Edit] in [Multicast Discovery Settings].

C 8 http://182.068.0.215/m_netw	ork, topip html		P-EdX A 🗘 🖯
	Functions that use SSL		
	Remote UI		
	Multicast Discovery Settings		
			Edt.
	Discovery Response:	On	
	Scope Name:	dofasit	
	Port Number Settings		
			E4L
	LPD:	515	
	RAW:	9100	
	HTTP:	80	
	SNMP:	161	
	WSD Multisast Discovery:	3702	

5 Select the [Respond to Discovery] check box and enter the required information.

SENSYS LUPGODW/6010w	LIPGIDIw6010w1	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log (
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manag
Yeferences □ Display Settings □ Traner Settings IdjustmentMaintenance □ Utility Mensi iyutem Management Settings	Sellings/Registration System Managenerit Sellings N Edit Muhikasa Discoursy Settings Change the following sattings. Changes will be effective after the main power in turn	ekasik Setings > TGFVP Setings > Tok Walkcad Discovery Setings ed CFF and ON. GK Cancel
System Management Settings System Management Security Settings Noticork Settings Initialize Setting Information	Madicant Discovery Settings	

[Respond to Discovery] Select the check box to set the machine to respond to imageWARE multicast discovery packets and enable management by imageWARE. If you do not want to respond, clear the check box.

[Scope Name]

To include the machine in a specific scope, enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the scope name.

6 Click [OK].

7 Restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

Security LBP6030w

Confidential information is handled by information devices everywhere, including computers and printers, and any of these devices may become a target for malicious third parties at any time. Attackers may directly gain unauthorized access to your devices, or indirectly take advantage of negligence or improper use. Either way, you may incur unanticipated losses when your confidential information is leaked. To counter these risks, this machine is equipped with a variety of security functions. Set the necessary configuration depending on your network environment.

Establishing the Basics of Information Security



OProtecting the Machine from Unauthorized Access

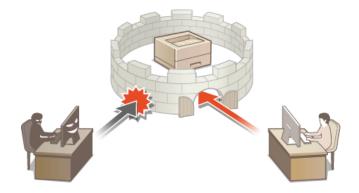
Implementing Robust Security Features



CEnabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI

Protecting the Machine from Unauthorized Access LBP6030w

To prevent unauthorized third parties from accessing and using the machine, you can implement multiple security measures, such as setting system manager passwords, using firewalls, and changing port numbers.



Setting System Manager Passwords LBP6030w

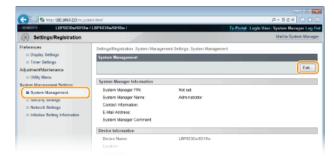
Administrator access rights are required to change machine settings from the Remote UI. After logging in as an administrator, use the following procedure to set the PIN (system manager password). The system manager password is critical to the security of the machine. Make sure that only system managers know the system manager password.

Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. Starting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

🕞 💿 🔞 krp//182.088.0.215/portel	(sep-hem)	P-862
famory.	Device Name: LBP0000w9810w Product Name: LBP6000w9810w Location:	Login User: System Manager Log Ov
😪 Remote UI: Portal		Mail to System Manager
	Lest Updated 01/01 2013 00:34:26 PM	Status Monitov/Cancel
Device Basic Information		
Device Status		Settings/Registration
Printer: Roady to print.		4
Error Information		
No errore.		-
Sepport Link		1
Support Link:		
		Depyright CAVKIN INC. 2013

3 Click [System Management] ▶ [Edit].



4 Enter the PIN.

-				
C 8 http://182.068.0.215/m_zyol	ters, edit. How			P-16× 0 ☆ 8
LIP6030wr6010w	(L8P6838w6018w)		To Portal Login U	ser: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences Display Settings Timer Settings AdjustmentMaintenance Utility Mene	Settings/Registration System Via Edit System Management Change the following settings.	nagement Seltings. System M	anagement > Edit System Mana	generit OK Cancel
System Management Settings	System Manager Information			
 System Management Security Settings Network Settings 	System Manager PIN:	Not set.		
 Initialize Setting Information 	Pilk, Confirm:		(Max 7 digits) (Max 7 digits)	
	System Manager Name: Contact Information	Administrator		

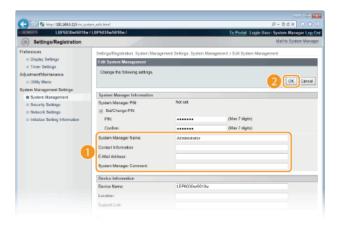
[Set/Change PIN]

To set or change a PIN, select the check box and enter a number of up to 7 digits. Enter the same number in both in the [PIN] and [Confirm] text boxes.

NOTE:

- You cannot register a PIN that consists only of zeros, such as "00" or "0000000."
- To clear a PIN setting, select the [Set/Change PIN] check box and click [OK] with the [PIN] and [Confirm] text boxes empty.

5 Enter the name and contact information of the system manager as necessary, and click [OK].



[System Manager Name] Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the name of the system manager.

[Contact Information]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the contact information of the system manager.

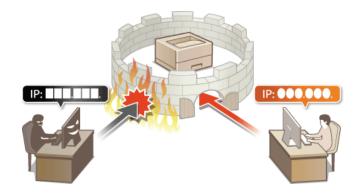
[E-Mail Address]

Enter up to 64 alphanumeric characters for the e-mail address of the system manager.

[System Manager Comment] Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for a comment about the system manager.

Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls LBP6030w

Without proper security, unauthorized third parties can access computers and other communication devices that are connected to a network. To lower the risk of unauthorized access, you can allow communication with devices having specified IP addresses and reject communication with other devices. Conversely, you can also reject communication with devices having specified IP addresses and allow communication with other devices. You can specify a single IP address or a range of IP addresses.



NOTE

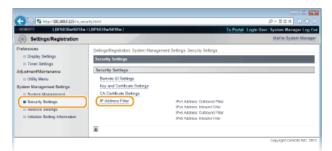
- Up to 16 IP addresses (or ranges of IP addresses) can be specified for both IPv4 and IPv6.
- The communication protocols that can be restricted in this way are TCP, UDP, and ICMP.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

herearry,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030wf918w LBP5030wf918w	Login User: System Manager Log (
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Manag
		Last Updated 01101 2015 03:34:20 PM	Status Monitos/Cancel
levice Basic Information			V
Device Status			Settings/Registration
Printet: Roady to print.			477
Error Information			
No errora.			
iupport Link			
Support Link:			

Click [Security Settings] ▶ [IP Address Filter].



4 Click [Edit] to specify a filter type.



[IPv4 Address: Outbound Filter]

Restrict data sent from the machine to a computer by specifying an IPv4 address.

[IPv4 Address: Inbound Filter]

Restrict data received by the machine from a computer by specifying an IPv4 address.

[IPv6 Address: Outbound Filter]

Restrict data sent from the machine to a computer by specifying an IPv6 address.

[IPv6 Address: Inbound Filter]

Restrict data received by the machine from a computer by specifying an IPv6 address.

5 Specify the settings for filtering.

As the policy conditions, select a default policy to allow or reject communication between the machine and other devices. Then specify IP addresses for exceptions.

Compared to the first and the set of th	-			
Settings/Registration Data to Spring Heady Status Data to Spring Heady Status <thdata heady="" spring="" status<="" th="" to=""> Data</thdata>	Ce 🛞 🛿 http://182.068.0.215/mj.rec.)	pfilter_vfsend.htm/	0 ×5E+9,	
Peterceres Datys (Selargs Datys (Selargs) Deterceres Datys (Selargs) Deterceres Datys (Selargs) Deterceres Deterceres Datys (Selargs) Deterceres Detercereres Deterceres Deter	LIPEO30w/6013w/	L8P6838w/6018w/	To Portel Login User: System Manager	Log Out
Dayley Sintage The Series Dayley Sintage The Series The Seri	Settings/Registration		Mail to System I	lanager
Nature 5. Settings Nature 5. Settings Nature 5. Settings Excludit Project Excludit Project Program	Display Settings Timer Settings AdjustmentMaintenance Utility Mene System Nancegement Settings System Nancegement	Filer IP48 Address: Edit Durbourn Change the following setting Changes will be effective alle	d Filer A e the main power is turned OFF and ON.	
Alar Alar				
Address to Regarder:	to instance beining incompation	Detault Policy:		
"To ender nutriges IP addresses at the same target as fittings. No. 30 to 00.00		Exception Addresses		
*To specify the prefix length, writer the IP address as before, oncolor, and another length () 22)		Address to Register:	Add	
			r fe P alleves an interes coston monoto (prefix length 0.22)	
Copyright CAHON INC. 2013			Callyngint CANON I	NC. 2913

1 Select the [Use Filter] check box, and then select a policy with [Default Policy].

[Use Filter]

Select the check box to restrict communication. Clear the check box to communicate without restrictions.

[Default Policy]

As the policy conditions, select whether to allow or reject other devices to communicate with the machine.

[Reject]	Select to allow communication only when the data is sent to or received from devices whose IP addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communication with other devices is prohibited.
[Allow]	Select to block data that is sent to or received from devices whose IP addresses are entered in [Exception Addresses]. Communication with other devices is allowed.

2 Specify address exceptions.

Enter an IP address (or a range of IP addresses) in the [Address to Register] text box and click [Add].

NOTE:

- Entry format for IP addresses
- To enter a single address (IPv4)
 - Enter numbers delimited by "." (periods) (Example: "192.168.0.10").
- To enter a single address (IPv6)

Enter hexadecimal numbers delimited by ":" (colons) (Example: "fe80::10").

- To specify a range of addresses Insert a hyphen ("-") between the addresses (Examples: "192.168.0.10-192.168.0.20" "fe80::10-fe80::20").
- To specify a range of addresses with a prefix Enter an address, followed by a slash ("/") and a number indicating the prefix length (Examples: "192.168.0.32/27" "fe80::1234/64").

When [Reject] is selected for an outbound filter

Outgoing multicast and broadcast packets cannot be filtered.

To delete an IP address that has been set

Select the IP address to delete, and then click [Delete].

	Add	
same time	e, use a hyphen as follows: x00-x00-x00-x00-x00-x00-x00-x00-x00-x00	
IP addres	is as follows: xoo.coc.coc.kx (prefix length: 0-32)	
	192 168 0 10 192 168 0 10 192 168 0 20	
	192.166.0.32/21	
	Delete	

3 Click [OK].

6 Restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

Changing Port Numbers LBP6030w

Ports serve as endpoints for communicating with other devices. Typically, standard port numbers are used for major protocols, but devices that use these port numbers are vulnerable to attacks because these port numbers are well-known. To enhance security, some network administrators prefer to change the port numbers. When a port number has been changed, the new number must be shared between communicating devices, such as computers and servers. If a port number changes, set it on this machine as well.

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

issents,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBPR000w5019w LBP5000w5019w	Login User: System Manager Log (
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Manag
		Last Updated 01101 2015 00:34:20 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
evice Basic Information			
Device Status			SettinguRegistration
Printet: ORoady to print.			47
Error Information			
No errore.			
apport Link			
Support Link:			

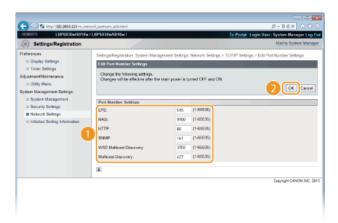
3 Click [Network Settings] ▶ [TCP/IP Settings].

CIIC/2000/00/00/00/00/00/00/00/00/00/00/00/0			P + E C X To Portel Login User: System Manager Log Nail to System Manager Log
Settings/Registration Preferences Display Settings	SetingsRegistration System V	aragement Settings. Network Settings	
Timer Settings AdjustmentMaintenance Utility Mene	Network Settings	Pol Settros	
System Management Settings		IPvG Settings WINS Settings LPD Print Settings	
Network Settings In Network Settings In Interaction Settings		NelBIO3 Sellings RAW Print Bothegs WBD Softings	
		551, Settings Part Number Settings MTU Bars Bettings SNTP Settings Multicial Discovery Settings	
	SMMP Satings	SNMPV1 Settings	

4 Click [Edit] in [Port Number Settings].

1 Col es este 182 2000	215 Vm_metwork_projochtml		.0×88×0.
	Discovery Response:	On	
	Scope Name:	default	
	Port Number Sottings		
	LPD:	515	
	RAW:	9100	
	HTTP:	80	
	SNMP:	161	
	WSD Multicast Discovery	3/02	
	Multicast Discovery :	427	
	MTU Size Settings		
			Edt.
	MTU Size:	1500	

5 Change the port number, and click [OK].



[LPD]/[RAW]

Change the port used for LPD printing or RAW printing. For details about each protocol, see **Configuring Printing Protocols** and Web Services.

[HTTP]

Change the port used by HTTP. HTTP is used for communications over the network, such as when you access the machine via the Remote UI.

[SNMP]

Change the port used by SNMP. For details about SNMP, see OMOnitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP.

[WSD Multicast Discovery]

Change the port used for WSD multicast discovery. For details about WSD, see Configuring Printing Protocols and Web Services.

[Multicast Discovery]

Change the port used for SLP multicast discovery. For details about SLP, see **Configuring SLP Communication with** imageWARE.

6 Restart the machine.

Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

LINKS

Configuring Printer Ports

Enabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI LBP6030w

Authorized users may incur unanticipated losses from attacks by malicious third parties, such as sniffing, spoofing, and tampering of data as it flows over a network. To protect your valuable data, you can encrypt Remote UI communication between the machine and a Web browser on the computer by using Secure Sockets Layer (SSL). SSL is a mechanism for encrypting data sent or received over the network. SSL must be enabled when the Remote UI is used to make settings for SNMPv3. To use SSL for the Remote UI, you need to set a key pair and enable the SSL function. Have a key pair ready to use (Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates).



IMPORTANT

When you use SSL to encrypt communication with the Remote UI, set the time data of the machine. You can use either of the following methods to set the time data.

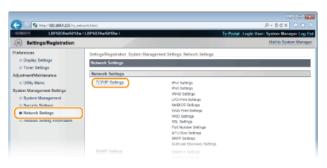
- Use a network time server to adjust the machine's system clock Configuring SNTP
- Notify the machine of the currently set time on your computer OSynchronizing to the time set on the computer

Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

Click [Settings/Registration].

inenerity.	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030w5018w LBP5030w5018w	Login Usor: System Manager Log (
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Manag
		Last Updated 01101 2013 03.34:20 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
levice Basic Information			
Device Status			Settings/Registration
Printet: Roady to print.			47
Error Information			
No errore.			
epport Link			
Support Link:			

Click [Network Settings] ▶ [TCP/IP Settings].



4 Click [Key and Certificate] in [SSL Settings].

-			
C 8 http://182.068.0.215/m_nttv	rork, topip html		P-16× ∩ ☆ 0
	Use Multicast Discovery:	On	
	SSL Settings		
			Key and Certificate
	Key and Certificate Settings	Not set.	
	Functions that use \$5L		
	Remote UI		
	Multicast Discovery Settings		
			Edt.
	Discovery Response:	On	
	Scope Name:	dofault	
	Port Number Settings		
			Edt.

5 Select the key to use from the list of keys and certificates, and click [Register Default Key].

LIP6010wr6013	w/LEP6838w/6018w	4	To Po	ঝ Login User: System Manager Lo
Settings/Registration				Mail to System Mar
references = Display Settings = Timer Settings djustmant/Naintenance = Utility Mana	Seturga Registr Koy and Occid Register De Select	icate Settings	tings. Network Settings > TCP/IP 5 Key Usage	ietings > Key and Cetificate Settings Cetificate
viten Management Settinge © System Management © Security Settings		Example Sample		(2) (3)
Network Settings Initialize Setting Information	×			

NOTE:

Viewing details of a key pair or certificate

You can check the details of the certificate or verify the certificate by clicking the corresponding text link under [Key Name], or the certificate icon. **Verifying Key Pairs and CA Certificates**

6 Enable SSL.

1 Click [Security Settings] ▶ [Remote UI Settings].

C 100 Map/132268.0215/m, record; LIPE03Dw/631Dw (1)			P + E C X ∩ 12 C To Portel Login User: System Manager Log Os
Settings/Registration			Nail to System Manager
heterocos = Dapte Sellings = Tree: Sellings digatore Martinacci = URAy Main = URAy Main = Societa Management Settings = Societa Management Security Society = metrocos beimgi = Interce Baimgi = I	SetingsRegistration System Karag Security Settings Becerity Settings (Barcel UI Seting) Kay and Cetitour Betings CA Conficate Betings P. Addrea Fiber 2	ervert Settings, Security Settings Pv4 Address, Codowrd Pflar IV4 Address, Fabourd Pflar IV4 Address, Fabourd Pflar IV4 Address, Fabourd Pflar IV4 Address, Fabourd Pflar	
			Cetyrant CANON INC.

2 Click [Edit].

Settings/Registration				Mail to System Mar
Preferences = Display Settings	Settings/Registration System	n Management Settings. Security S	etings > Remote UI Setting	
c: Timer Settings Adjustment/Maintenance	Autor of Seriega			Lát
 Utility Menu System Management Settings System Management 	Remote UI Settings Use SSL:	0#		
Socurity Sottings Network Sattings Initialize Sotting Information	×			
				Copyright CANON INC

3 Select the [Use SSL] check box and click [OK].

-	nut 6 l	8
C- 8 http://182.668.0.215/m_secur	p = Ed X 🕥 🏠	
LIPE030wr6013wr	.8P5030w5010w7 To Portal Login User: System Manager Log	046
(A) Settings/Registration	Nail to System Manag	er.
Petereces = Dayle Selays = Trac Selays Adjaster Mairseace = URN Mes System Management = Srucher Management = Srucher Management = Secury Solarya = Network Selays = Initialize Sectory Information	SetingsRegulation System Varagement Setings Security Setings > Beaster UI Setings > Edit Bensie UI Setings Concept will be define a der De niste power is turned CFF and CM Concept will bedrift and affer De niste power is turned CFF and CM Concept will be define a der De niste power is turned CFF and CM Concept will be Settings Concept will be Settings Concept will be settings The Description of the Settings of the Settings to use SSL Set For worked by in Key and Confectore Settings under SSL Settings to use SSL	1
	Cepyrge CANON INC. 2	913

[Use SSL]

Select the check box to use SSL in communication with the Remote UI. Clear the check box if you do not want to use SSL.



Restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

NOTE

Starting the Remote UI with SSL enabled

If you start the Remote UI when SSL is enabled, a security alert may be displayed regarding the security certificate. In this case, check that the correct URL is entered in the address field, and then proceed to display the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI

LINKS

Generating Key Pairs
 Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates
 Monitoring and Controlling the Machine with SNMP

Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates LBP6030w

In order to encrypt communication with a remote device, an encryption key must be sent and received over an unsecured network beforehand. This problem is solved by public-key cryptography. Public-key cryptography ensures secure communication by protecting valuable information from attacks, such as sniffing, spoofing, and tampering of data as it flows over a network.

Key Pair



A key pair consists of a public key and a secret key, both of which are required for encrypting or decrypting data. Data can be exchanged safely, because encrypted data cannot be decrypted without the other key in a key pair. You can register up to three key pairs (**Cusing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates**). Key pairs can also be generated by the machine (**Cusing Key Pairs**).

CA Certificate



Digital certificates including CA certificates are similar to other forms of identification, such as driver's licenses. A digital certificate contains a digital signature, which enables the machine to detect any spoofing or tampering of data. It is extremely difficult for third parties to abuse digital certificates. Digital certificates (including public keys) that are issued by a certificate authority (CA) are called CA certificates. You can register up to three CA certificates including the one that is preinstalled (**Ousing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates**).

Key and Certificate Operating Requirements

Certificates for key pairs generated with the machine must conform to X.509v3. If you install a key pair or a CA certificate from a computer, make sure that they meet the following requirements.

Format	 Key pair: PKCS#12*1 CA certificate: X.509v1 or X.509v3, DER (encoded binary)
Files extension	 Key pair: ".p12" or ".pfx" CA certificate: ".cer"
Public key algorithm (and key length)	RSA (512 bits ^{*2} , 1024 bits, 2048 bits, or 4096 bits)
Certificate signature algorithm	SHA1-RSA, SHA256-RSA, SHA384-RSA ^{*3} , SHA512-RSA ^{*3} , MD5-RSA, MD2-RSA
Certificate thumbprint algorithm	SHA1

*1 Requirements for the certificate contained in a key pair shall follow the operating conditions for CA certificates.

*2 Not supported when the operating system of the communication partner device is Windows 8/Server 2012. Depending on the application of update programs, encrypted communication may also not be possible with other versions of Windows.

 *3 SHA384-RSA and SHA512-RSA are available only when the RSA key length is 1024 bits or more.

NOTE

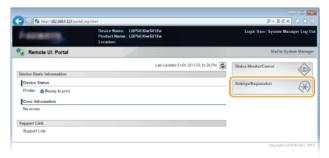
The machine does not support use of a certificate revocation list (CRL).

Generating Key Pairs LBP6030w

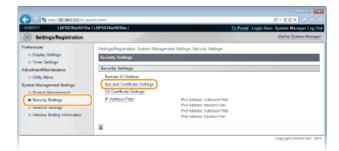
The key pair required for encrypted communication via Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) can be generated with the machine. You can use SSL when accessing the machine via the Remote UI. Up to three key pairs can be registered on the machine.

Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. Starting the Remote UI

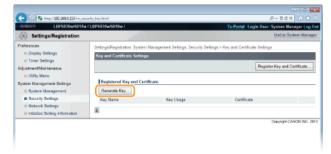
2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Security Settings] ▶ [Key and Certificate Settings].



4 Click [Generate Key].

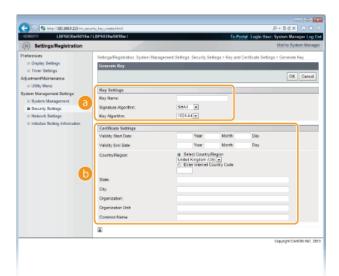


NOTE:

To delete a registered key pair

- On the right side of the key pair that you want to delete, click [Delete] > [OK].
- A key pair cannot be deleted when "SSL" is displayed under [Key Usage], indicating that the key pair is currently in use. In this case, disable SSL or replace the key pair with another. You will then be able to delete it.

5 Specify settings for the key and certificate.



[Key Settings]

[Key Name]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for naming the key pair. Set a name that will be easy for you to find later in a list.

[Signature Algorithm]

Select the signature algorithm from the drop-down list.

[Key Algorithm]

The algorithm used to generate keys is RSA. Select the key length from the drop-down list. The larger the number for the key length, the slower the communication. However, the security is tighter.

[512-bit] cannot be selected for the key length, if [SHA384] or [SHA512] is selected for [Signature Algorithm].

[Certificate Settings]

NOTE:

[Validity Start Date]

Enter the first date of validity of the certificate in year/month/day format in the range 1 January 2000 to 31 December 2037.

[Validity End Date]

Enter the last date of validity of the certificate in year/month/day format in the range 1 January 2000 to 31 December 2037. A date earlier than the [Validity Start Date] cannot be set.

[Country/Region]

Click the [Select Country/Region] radio button and select the country/region from the drop-down list. You can also click the [Enter Internet Country Code] radio button and enter a country code, such as "US" for the United States.

[State]/[City]

As necessary, enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the address.

[Organization]/[Organization Unit]

As necessary, enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the name of the organization.

[Common Name]

As necessary, enter up to 48 alphanumeric characters for the common name of the certificate. "Common Name" is often abbreviated as "CN."

6 Click [OK].

- A key pair may take approximately 10 to 15 minutes to generate.
- After a key pair is generated, it is automatically registered to the machine.

LINKS

OUsing CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates Verifying Key Pairs and CA Certificates

CEnabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI

Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates LBP6030w

Key pairs and digital certificates can be obtained from a certification authority (CA) for use with the machine. After obtaining them from a CA, you can install and register key pairs and CA certificate files on the machine by using the Remote UI. Make sure that the key pair and the certificate satisfy the requirements of the machine (**Skey and Certificate Operating Requirements**). You can register up to three key pairs and three CA certificates including the preinstalled ones.

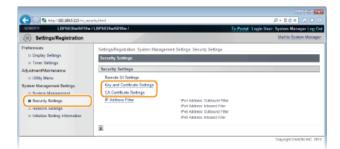


Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

i some rig,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBPS030w5019w LBPS030w5019w	Login User: System Manager Log
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Manag
		Last Updated 01/01 2013 00:34:26 PM	Bittus Monitos/Cancel
evice Basic Information			
Device Status			SellinguRegistration
Printer: Roady to print.			470
Error Information			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
No errore.			
epport Link			
Support Link:			

Click [Security Settings] > Click [Key and Certificate Settings] or [CA Certificate Settings].
 Click [Key and Certificate Settings] to install a key pair, or [CA Certificate Settings] to install a CA certificate.



4 Click [Register Key and Certificate] or [Register CA Certificate].



NOTE:

To delete a registered key pair or CA certificate

- On the right of the key pair or CA certificate you want to delete, click [Delete] > [OK].
- A key pair cannot be deleted when "SSL" is displayed under [Key Usage], indicating that the key pair is currently in use. In this case, disable SSL or replace the key pair with another. You will then be able to delete it.

5 Click [Install].

.

■ You can only install one file on this machine. If another file is already installed, click [Delete] > [OK] to delete the previously installed file.



6 Click [Browse], specify the file to install, and click [Start Installation].

	w/LEP\$839w/6018w/	To Porte	Login User: System Manager Log (
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manag
Preferences = Display Settings	SettingsRegistration. System Certificate > Install Key and	n Management Settings. Security Settings > Key and Ce Settilicate	stilicate Settings > Register Key and
Timer Settings	Install Key and Certificate		1
Adjustment/Maintenance © Utility Menu System Management Settings	Specify the file path of the Click [Browse] to select a f	key and certificate to install. lie.	9 Start Installation Cancel
System Management			
Security Settings	Install Key and Certificate		
D Network Settings	File Path:	C1Example/EXAMPLE.p12	Browse
Initialize Setting Information	X		

The key pair or CA certificate from the computer is installed in the machine.

7 Register the key pair or CA certificate.

Registering a key pair

1 Click [Register] on the right of the key pair you want to register.

L NPCOLOWIGHTS	w/LEP6030w/C018w/	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log 0
Settings/Registration		Nail to System Manage
Preferences Display Settings Trace Settings digustmentMultenance URIN Mone System Management Settings System Management System Satings Seturt's Settings	Saling, Ragistration: System Marage Certificate Registrate: Notable Key and Certificate Install. File Name EKAMPLE P12	need Settings: Security Settings > Key and Cardinate Settings > Register Key and Register
Initialize Setting Information	z .	

2 Enter the name of the key pair and password, and then click [OK].

-			
< 🛞 🚱 http://182.068.0.215/mj.tec./k	ey, reg, set Atmillid-L&File-EXAMPL	EP12	P-86× 0 ℃ 8
LIPS030w/9819w /	LEP6838w/6018w/	To Porte	Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences = Display Settings	Settings:Registration: System Certificate > Enter Private Key	Management Settings: Security Settings > Key and Co Password	stilicate Settings > Register Key and
Timer Settings	Enter Private Key Passwor	d (2)	
AdjustmentMaintenance II Utility Mensi	Enter the private key paper File Name: EXAMPLE P12	ord for this No.	
System Management Settings			2 OK Cancal
Security Settings	Enter Private Key Pacework	d in the second s	
Network Sellings	Key Name:	Exerpie	
Initialize Setting Information	Password:		
	×		
			Cosylight CANON INC. 2013

[Key Name]

Enter a name of up to 24 alphanumeric characters for registering the key pair in the machine. Set a name that will be easy for you to find later in a list.

[Password]

Enter up to 24 alphanumeric characters for the password of the secret key that is set in the file to be registered.

Click [Register] on the right of the CA certificate you want to register.

	v (LBP5030w/5018w /	To Postal Login User: System Manager Log
(*) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Man
Preferences = Display Settings = Trine: Settings AdjustmentMaintenance = Utility Menes System Management Settings = System Management = Society Settings	Register CA Certificate Installed CA Certificate Install. File Name EXAMPLE CER	end Selfogs Security Selfogs > CA Certificate Selfogs > Register CA Certificate Register Selfogs
 Network Settings Initialize Setting Information 	×	
		Copyright CANON INC.

LINKS

Generating Key Pairs
 Verifying Key Pairs and CA Certificates
 Enabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI

Verifying Key Pairs and CA Certificates LBP6030w

Once key pairs and CA certificates are registered, you can view their detailed information or verify their effective dates and signature.

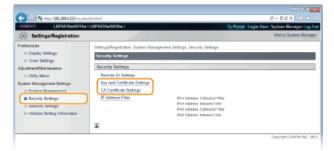
1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

lamang,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030wf6118w LBP5030wf6118w	Login User: System Manager Lo
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Man
		Last Updated 01/01 2013 00:34	28 PM 🔹 Status Monitos/Cancel 🥢
Device Basic Information			12
Device Status			Settings/Registration
Printer: Ready to print.			47
Error Information			
No errore.			
Sepport Link			
Support Link:			

Click [Security Settings] > Click [Key and Certificate Settings] or [CA Certificate Settings].

• Click [Key and Certificate Settings] to verify a key pair, or [CA Certificate Settings] to verify a CA certificate.



4 Click the icon for the key pair or CA certificate that you want to verify.

🗧 💿 🔞 http://182.068.0.215/mj.co	surity, key-html			.P+16× 0 ℃
LUP6030w/6019w	1 LEPS039w/6018w1		To Portel 1	ogin User: System Manager Log (
Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manag
references	Settings/Registration: Sy	sten Management Settings. Se	curity Settings > Key and Certilic	ale Settings
Display Settings	Key and Certificate Se	tings		1
Timer Settings diustmentMaintenance				Register Key and Certificate
Utility Menu				
uten Management Settings	Registered Key and	Certificate		
System Management	Generate Key			
Security Settings	Key Name	Key Usage	Certificate	
Network Sellings	Example			Delete
Initialize Setting Information	×			
	*			
				CREWIGH CANON INC. 2

Certificate details are displayed.

5 Check the certificate details, and click [Certificate Verification].



The result from verifying the certificate is displayed as shown below.

-		
C 8 http://182.068.0.215/mj.sec	arity, key, prop., verify.html/id=18.xs=1	P-ECX 0 0 0
LUP6030wr6013w	1 LEP5838w/5018w3	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preixences = Display Settings = Timer Settings AdjustmentMaintenance = Uhilly Mene System Management = System Management	Certificate Verification	This conflicate is valid. Back to Certificate Details
Security Settings Network Settings Initialize Setting Information	Ĩ	Colonaria Chada Inc. 2013

LINKS

Generating Key Pairs
 Using CA-issued Key Pairs and Digital Certificates

Using the Remote UI LBP6030w

You can use a Web browser to operate the machine remotely, check the documents waiting to be printed, and check the status of the machine. You can also make network and other settings for the machine. The "Remote UI" starts when you enter the IP address of the machine in your Web browser. It is very convenient, because it allows you to operate the machine remotely without leaving your desk or installing a special application.



Tasks you can do in the Remote UI OManaging Documents and Checking the Machine Status OChanging Machine Settings

How to use the Remote UI OStarting the Remote UI ORemote UI Screens

System Requirements

The following environment is required to use the Remote UI. In addition, set your Web browser to enable cookies.

Windows

- Windows XP/Vista/7/8
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later

Mac OS

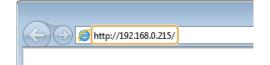
- Mac OS 10.4 or later
- Safari 3.2.1 or later

Starting the Remote UI LBP6030w

To operate the machine remotely, start the Remote UI by entering the machine's IP address in your Web browser. Before starting, check the IP address that has been assigned to the machine (**Viewing Network Settings**). If you do not know the machine's IP address, ask your network administrator, or start the Remote UI from the Printer Status Window (**Starting from the Printer Status Window**).

Start the Web browser.

2 Enter "http://<IP address of the machine>/" in the address field, and press the [ENTER] key.



If you are using an IPv6 address, enclose the IPv6 address with brackets (example: "http://[fe80:2e9e:fcff:fe4e:dbce]/").

NOTE:

If a host name for the machine is registered with a DNS server

Instead of <IP address of the machine>, you can enter <"host name"."domain name"> (example: "http://my_printer.example.com").

If a security alert is displayed

A security alert may be displayed when communication with the Remote UI is encrypted (**Communication for the Remote UI**). If there are no problems with certificate settings or SSL settings, continue browsing to the Remote UI site.

3 Select [System Manager Mode] or [End-User Mode].

Calloli Login Lef93204511th r LBF463(0x45118v / CBF93204511th r LBF463(0x45118v / Defense PR Defense PR Login Copyright CAMON INC, 2013				
Souther Manuaer PN to End User Mode Log In.	Canon	Login LEP9330w/6018w / LEP6030w/6018w /		
(b) (in End User Node)				
Copyright CANON INC. 2013			Log in	
			Capyright CANON INC. 2013	

[System Manager Mode]

You can perform all Remote UI operations and make all settings. If a PIN (system manager password) has been set, enter it in [System Manager PIN]. (**Setting System Manager Passwords**) If a PIN has not been set (factory default setting), you do not need to input anything.

[End-User Mode]

You can check the status of documents or the machine, and you can also check the settings.

4 Click [Log In].

The Portal Page (main page) of the Remote UI appears. SRemote UI Screens

i water and	Device Name: LBP6030w/6018w Product Name: LBP5030w/6018w Location:	Login Usor: System Manager Log
Remote UI: Portal		Mail to System Manu
	Last Updated 0101 2013 00:34 2	S PN 🔹 Status Monitor/Cancel
Device Basic Information		
Device Status		Settings/Registration
Printer: Roady to print.		47
Error Information		
No errors.		
Sepport Link		
Support Link:		

Starting from the Printer Status Window

Select the machine by clicking 🚇 in the system tray.



2 Click 🚳.

Canon LEP6030/6040/6018L	- C - X
Job Options Help	
Ready to Print	Å
	Troubleshooting Details .

➡ Your Web browser starts, and the login page of the Remote UI appears.

NOTE:

If a security alert is displayed

A security alert may be displayed when communication with the Remote UI is encrypted (**CEnabling SSL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI**). If there are no problems with certificate settings or SSL settings, continue browsing to the Remote UI site.

3 Select [System Manager Mode] or [End-User Mode].

Callon	Login	
	L8P9030w9018w / L8P9	030w/6018w /
a System Manage	r Mode	
Sivaters Manage		
End-User Mode)	
		Log In
		Copyright CANON INC. 2013

[System Manager Mode]

You can perform all Remote UI operations and make all settings. If a PIN (system manager password) has been set, enter it in [System Manager PIN]. (Setting System Manager Passwords). If a PIN has not been set (factory default setting), you do not need to input anything.

[End-User Mode]

You can check print documents, check the status of the machine, and view machine settings.

4 Click [Log In].

The Portal Page (main page) of the Remote UI appears. ORemote UI Screens

C C R Http://182.088.0.215/portel	top html	P-86X 0.00
famore,	Device Name: LBP5030w/613w Product Name: LBP5030w/613w Location:	Login User: System Manager Log Out
🚷 Remote UI: Portal		Mail to System Manager
	Last Updated 0101 2015 03.34:20 PM	Status Monitos/Cancel
Device Basic Information		\sim
Device Status		Settings/Registration
Printer: Roady to print.		47
Error Information		
No errore.		
Support Link		
Support Link:		
		Depyright O/WOW INC. 2013

Remote UI Screens LBP6030w

This section describes the main screens of the Remote UI.

Portal Page (Main Page) [Status Monitor/Cancel] Page

[Settings/Registration] Page

Portal Page (Main Page)

i anatang,	Device Name: LBP9030w6018w Product Name: LBP9030w6018w Location:	Logis User: System
Remote UI: Portal		2 Mail to System Manager
evice Basic Information	Land Updated Div01 2019 03	Status MonitorCoreel
Device Status Printer: Ready to print.	4	Settings Registration
Error Information	<u> </u>	
epport Link	5	

[Log Out]

Logs out from the Remote UI and returns to the log on page.

[Mail to System Manager]

Displays a window for creating an e-mail to the system manager. Contact information for the system manager is specified in [System Manager Information] under [System Management].

8 Refresh Icon

Refreshes the current page.

2 Device Basic Information

Displays the current status of the machine and error information. If an error has occurred, a link to the Error Information page is displayed.

Support Link

Displays a link to support information, as specified in [Device Information] under [System Management].

[Status Monitor/Cancel]

Displays the [Status Monitor/Cancel] page. You can use this page to check the current printing status, cancel print processing, and view a history of print jobs.

[Settings/Registration]

Displays the [Settings/Registration] page. When you are logged on in System Manager Mode, you can use this page to change machine settings. Changing Machine Settings

[Status Monitor/Cancel] Page

Statu Z xor/Cane						Mail to System Man
a Job Status	Status Monitor/Car Print: Job Status	ncel: Print: Job Status	3		1.00	Jpdanket 01/01 2013 10 4
= Job Log	114E 368 390E				Linder	Jpdeled 01/01 2013 0
Error Information	Print Job Stat	45				
Device Features	Job Number	Job Name	Status	Job Operation	Job Type	Time
Device Information	0022	Document 1.rtf	Printing	Cancel	Printer	01/01 2013 08:23:36 FM
: Check Counter						
	I I I I I I I I I I					
						COLVIGHT CANON INC.

[] [To Portal] Returns to the Portal Page (main page).

<u> Menu</u>

Click an item to display the content in the page on the right. OManaging Documents and Checking the Machine Status

Breadcrumb trail

Indicates the series of pages you opened to display the current page. You can use this to check which page you are currently displaying.

4 Refresh Icon

Refreshes the current page.

[Top Icon

Moves up to the top of the page when it has been scrolled out of view.

[Settings/Registration] Page

Settir 2 Jatration	w (LEPSEDIw/S018w J	P - E C X A C
Preferences © Display Sellings = Timer Settings dystreadVolarinanaco = Uhilih Meie System Management Settings = System Management = Sicurity Settings = Sicurity Settings = Netouch Settings = Netouch Settings	Centropalitegial davin Performens Display Stellargo 3 Tangatay Sentingia Ethoplay Sentingia Berecis Ul Languages English R 4	ta.
Initialize Setting Information	J	Copyright CANON INC. 2

[To Portal]

Returns to the Portal Page (main page).

ව Menu

Click an item to display the content in the page on the right. OChanging Machine Settings

Breadcrumb trail

Indicates the series of pages you opened to display the current page. You can use this to check which page you are currently displaying.

[Top Icon

Moves up to the top of the page when it has been scrolled out of view.

NOTE

About [System Management Settings]

- You can change system settings only when you have logged on in System Manager Mode.
- When you have logged on in End-User Mode, only [System Management] is displayed.

Managing Documents and Checking the Machine Status LBP6030w

Checking the Current Status of Print Documents Checking the History of Printed Documents Checking Error Information Checking the Maximum Print Speed Checking System Manager Information

Viewing the Page Counter Value

NOTE

The name of the application that requested printing may be added to the file name of printed documents.

Checking the Current Status of Print Documents

You can check a list of up to five documents that are currently printing or waiting to be printed.

Log on to the Remote UI (Starting the Remote UI) > [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Job Status]

Status Monitor/Cancel						Mail to System M
Job Status		icel: Print: Job Status				
- 300 Log	Print: Job Status				Last	Updated 01/01 2013 08:23:46 Ph
nor information	Print Job Stat	15				
evice Features	Job Number	Job Name	Status	Job Operation	Job Type	Time
evice Information heck Counter	0022	Document 1.rtf	Printing	Cancel	Printer	01/01 2013 08:23:36 PM
	×					
						Copyright CANON IN

You can click [Cancel] to delete the print job for a document that is currently printing or waiting to be printed.

NOTE

- Click [Job Number] to display detailed information about a document. For example, you can check the user name and the print page count of the document.
- If an error occurs, but printing can continue nevertheless, [Continue/Retry] appears in [Job Operation]. You can click [Continue/Retry] to clear the error and resume printing. However, the printing may not be performed properly if you use the Continue/Retry function to clear the error and resume printing.

Checking the History of Printed Documents

The history displays a list of up to 50 printed documents.



Log on to the Remote UI (Starting the Remote UI) > [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Job Log]

C C Mttp://182.068.0.215/jHis.pfic				7.0		P - E G X 0 C
<u>^</u>	CONSTRUCTION			1070	See Login I	Mail to Scatem Man
Status Monitor/Cancel						Marto System Mar
rint	Status Monitor/C	ancel: Prin	t: Job Lag			
to Joh Status	Print Job Log				Last Upda	nled 01/01 2013 08:27:41 PM
■ Job Log						
Error information	Print Job Lo	9				
Device Features	Job Number	Result	Start Time	End Time	Job Type	File Name
Device Information	0022	Error	01/01 2013 08:23:36 PM	01/01 2013 08:25:24 PM	Printer	Document 1.nf
Check Counter	0021	OK.	01/01 2013 08:19:21 PM	01/01 2013 08:19:33 PM	Printer	Document 1.nt
	9929	OK	01/01 2013 07:24:06 PM	01/01 2013 07:24:24 PM	Printer	Network Status Print
	0019	OK	01/01 2013 07:23:45 PM	01/01 2013 07:23:53 PM	Printer	Configuration Page
	0018	OK	01/01 2013 07:22:30 PM	01/01 2013 07:22:42 PM	Report	
	0017	OK.	01/01 2013 06:14:44 PM	01/01 2013 06:23:31 PM	Printer	Document 3.nf
	0016	OK.	01/01 2013 06:13:52 PM	01/01 2013 06:23:16 PM	Printer	Document 2.nf
	0015	OK	01/01 2013 06:13:44 PM	01/01 2013 06:23:10 PM	Printer	Document 1.nf
	0014	OK	01/01 2013 06:05:49 PM	01/01 2013 06:11:20 PM	Printer	Document 3.rtf

Checking Error Information

When an error occurs, you can display this page by clicking the message displayed under [Error Information] on the Portal Page (main page). **OPortal Page (Main Page)**

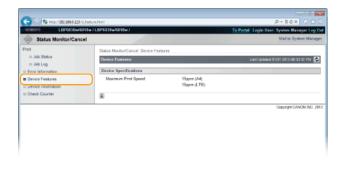
Log on to the Remote UI (Starting the Remote UI) > [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Error Information]

Status Monitor/Cancel			Mail to System Mar
V	_		
rint	Status M	onito/Cancel: Error Information	
I Job Status	Error In	lomation	Last Updated 01/01 2013-08 30:06 PM
Error Information	One or	more errors have occurred.	
LITTLE COMPLETS			
Device Information	Error In	formation	
Check Counter	0	The orver is open. Policy the procedure shown on the control panel or	described in the user's manual to securely class the cove
	x		
			Copyright CANON INC.

Checking the Maximum Print Speed

This page displays the maximum print speed of the machine.





Checking System Manager Information

5

This page displays information about the machine and the system manager. This information is set in [System Management] on the [Settings/Registration] page (**Changing Machine Settings**).



LIP6030wr6013wr	L8P\$839w/6018w3		To Portal Login User: System Manager Log
Status Monitor/Cancel			Mail to System Manu
Print	Status Monitor/Cancel: Device Inform	ation	
= Job Status = Job Log	Device Information	19	Lect Updated 01/01 2013 08 47:08 PM
Error Information	Device Basic Information		
Device Features	Vars/actume:	CANON INC.	
Device Information	Device Name:	LBP6030w6018w	
- clear counter	Location:		
	Product Name:	L6P6030w6018w	
	System Manager Information		
	System Manager Name:	Administrator	
	Contact Information:		
	E-Mail Address:		
	Support Link:		
	System Manager Comment		

Viewing the Page Counter Value

This page displays a total page count of the documents that have been printed.



Log on to the Remote UI (Starting the Remote UI) > [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Check Counter]

Status Monitor/Cancel		To Postal Login User: System Manager Log Mail to Spatem Mana	
III Job Status	Check Counter	Limit Updated 01/01 2013 08 47:33 PM	
Error Information	Mein Counter		
Device Features	Type	Total	
Device Information	Black & White Total	16	
Check Counter	=		
		Copyright CANON INC.	

LINKS

©Remote UI Screens

Changing Machine Settings LBP6030w

You can change various machine settings from your computer by using the Remote UI. For example, you can change network and security settings.

NOTE

However, to change settings under [System Management Settings], you must log on in System Manager Mode.



2 Click [Settings/Registration].

lamang,	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP6030wf618w LBP6030wf618w	Login User: System Manager Log C
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Manag
		Last Updated 01101 2015 00:34:26 PM	Status Monitor/Cancel
levice Basic Information			
Device Status			Settinga Registration
Printer: Roady to print.			47
Error Information			
No erroru.			
epport Link			
Support Link:			

3 Click the menu item you want to set, displaying it, and then click [Edit].

LIPG010wr6010w	(LIP6039w6010w)	To Portel Login User: System Manager Log
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manay
Preferences	Settings/Registration Preferences Display Settings	
Display Settings	Display Sottings	
Timer Settings		
djustmentMaintenance	Display Settings	
 Utility Menu 		Edit.
iyotem Maragement Settings		
System Management	Remote UI Language: English	
II Security Settings	×	
II Network Sellings	-	
II Initialize Setting Information		
		Cosylight CANON INC. 2

For details about the settings menu, see Setting Menu List.

LINKS

©Remote UI Screens

 \mathbf{T}

Setting Menu List LBP6030w

This section describes the menu items that can be set using the Remote UI. Default settings are marked with a dagger (†).

[Preferences] Menu

- ODisplay Settings
- CTimer Settings

[Adjustment/Maintenance] Menu OUtility Menu

[System Management Settings] Menu

- **O**System Management
- Security Settings
- Network Settings
- Initialize Setting Information

Display Settings

Select the display language used for the Remote UI screens.

Remote UI Language Chinese (Simplified) English † French German Italian Japanese Spanish



Log on to the Remote UI (**Starting the Remote UI**) > [Settings/Registration] > [Display Settings] > [Edit] > Select the display language > [OK]

-		
C 🔁 🙆 http://182.068.0.215/p.d	splay, setting Menl	,P+86X 0 ℃ 🖯
LUPGODWG01	w/L8P6038w6018w3	o Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: Preferences: Display Settings > Udt Display Settings	
Display Settings	Edit Display Settings	
Timer Settings		
AdjustmentMaintenance	Change the following settings.	
Utility Menu		OK. Cancel
System Management Settings	Display Settings	
System Management		
Security Settings	Remote UI Language: English 💌	
II Network Settings	8	
Initialize Setting Information	-	
		Copyright CANON INC. 2013

[Remote UI Language]

Selects the display language used for the Remote UI screens.

Timer Settings

Make settings related to time, such as the time zone.

```
Use Daylight Saving Time
   Off †
   On
      Start
          January to March<sup>†</sup> to December
          1st to Last<sup>†</sup>
          Monday to Sunday<sup>†</sup>
      End
          January to October<sup>+</sup> to December
          1st to Last<sup>†</sup>
          Monday to Sunday<sup>+</sup>
Auto Sleep Time
   Off
   After 1 minute<sup>†</sup>
   After 5 minutes
   After 10 minutes
   After 15 minutes
   After 30 minutes
   After 60 minutes
   After 90 minutes
   After 120 minutes
   After 150 minutes
   After 180 minutes
Auto Shutdown Time
   Off
   After 1 hour
   After 2 hours
   After 3 hours
   After 4 hours<sup>†</sup>
   After 5 hours
   After 6 hours
   After 7 hours
   After 8 hours
```



Log on to the Remote UI (Starting the Remote UI) > [Settings/Registration] > [Timer Settings] > [Edit] > Item settings > [OK]

C 182.068.0.215/p.tim			P-16X 0 0 €
LIP6030w/6011W	/ LEP5939w/6018w3	To Portel Login I	Iser: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences Display Settings Triner Settings AdjustmentMaintenance In Unite Mans	Settings/Registration: Preferences: T Edit Timer Sottings Change the following settings:	mer Sellings > Edit Timer Sellings	OK Cancel
Only seen System Management Settings System Management Security Settings Network Settings Network Settings Initiative Setting Information	Timer Settinos Time Zone:	UTC 800 .	
	Use Daylight Saving Time Start End Auto Steep Time Auto Steep Time	Mach v Last v Senday v Colder v Last v Senday v Aler I minde w Aler 4 Fours m	
	2		Copyright CANON INC. 2013

[Time Zone]

Set the time zone of the region where the machine will be used.

NOTE: UTC

Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) is the primary time standard by which the world regulates clocks and time. The correct UTC time zone setting is required for Internet communications.

[Use Daylight Saving Time]

Enable or disable daylight saving time. If daylight saving time is enabled, specify the dates from which and to which daylight saving time is in effect.

[Auto Sleep Time]

The machine enters sleep mode automatically when it remains idle for a certain length of time. Specify the length of time until the machine enters auto sleep. We recommend using the factory default settings to save the most power. **Setting Sleep Mode**

[Auto Shutdown Time]

You can set up the machine to automatically turn itself OFF after it remains idle for a certain length of time. This prevents wasted power consumption caused by forgetting to turn the machine OFF. Specify the length of time until the machine turns itself OFF. **Osetting Auto Shutdown**

Utility Menu

You can clean the fixing unit inside the machine.

Cleaning 🔽

Clean the fixing unit if black spots or streaks appear on printouts. Note that you cannot clean the fixing unit when the machine has documents waiting to be printed. To clean the fixing unit, you need plain A4 size paper. Before starting, load A4 size paper in the multi-purpose tray. (**Cleaning Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray**)

Log on to the Remote UI (Starting the Remote UI) [Settings/Registration] [Utility Menu] [Cleaning] [Execute] [OK]

LIPE030wr6313	w/LBP9830W6010w/	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log O
(A) Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manage
Preferences = Display Settings = Timer Settings Adjustment/Maintenance B Utility Mensi	Setings/Repainton: Adjustment/Voirtexance: Utility Veru > Cleaning Cleaning Execute the following items.	Execute Cancel
System Management Settings System Management Socurity Settings Network Settings	Cleaning Terms to Execute: Cleaning E	
Initialize Setting Information		Copyright CANON INC. 28

- The paper is fed slowly into the machine, and cleaning starts. The cleaning is done when the paper is completely ejected.
 - Cleaning cannot be cancelled once it starts. Wait until it finishes (approx. 140 seconds).

System Management

You can specify that a PIN (system manager password) is required when logging in to the Remote UI in System Manager Mode, and you can register information about the system manager, such as name and contact information. You can also register a name to identify this machine, and register its location.





Log on to the Remote UI in System Manager Mode (Starting the Remote UI) > [Settings/Registration] > [System Management] > [Edit] > Item settings > [OK]

C 10 182 188.0 215 m. system				P-BCX 000
LUPGOJOwr6010w /			To Portal Login Use	er: System Manager Log Out
(R) Settings/Registration				Mail to System Manager
Preferences = Display Settings = Timer Settings AdjustmentMaintenance = Utility Mene	Settings:Registration: System Variage Edit System Management Change the following settings.	enent Sellings. System Manap	ement > Edit System Manag	ersent OK Cancel
System Karagement Selfings B System Karagement Security Selfings Network Selfings Initialize Selfing Information	System Manager Information System Manager PN Softmap PN PN Confine System Manager Name: Context Information: E-Mail Advisor: System Manager Connext: E-Mail Advisor: E-Mail Advisor:	Not oet	(Max 7 digits) (Max 7 digits)	
6	Evolute Information Devices Name: Location: Support Link:	L8P0000w6010w		College Chrycler Inc. 2013

[System Manager Information]

Specify the PIN and other system manager information. **©Setting System Manager Passwords**

[Device Information]

[Device Name]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the name of the machine.

[Location]

Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for the location of the machine.

[Support Link]

Enter a link to support information about the machine. The link can be up to 128 alphanumeric characters long. The link is displayed on the Portal Page (main page) of the Remote UI.

Security Settings

Enable or disable encrypted communication via SSL and IP address packet filtering.

Remote UI Settings

Select whether to use SSL encrypted communication. SEL Encrypted Communication for the Remote UI

Use SSL	
Off †	
On	

Key and Certificate Settings

Register key pairs, or generate them on the machine. You can check and verify registered key pairs. **OConfiguring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates**

CA Certificate Settings

Register a CA certificate. One CA certificate is preinstalled. You can check and verify registered CA certificates. Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates

IP Address Filter

Specify whether to allow or reject packets sent to or received from devices with specified IP addresses.

IPv4 Address: Outbound Filter

Do not allow the machine to send data to a computer with a specified IPv4 address. **©Restricting Communication by Using** Firewalls

IPv4 Address: Inbound Filter

Reject data received by the machine from a computer with a specified IPv4 address. **©Restricting Communication by Using** Firewalls



IPv6 Address: Outbound Filter

Do not allow the machine to send data to a computer with a specified IPv6 address. **©Restricting Communication by Using** Firewalls



IPv6 Address: Inbound Filter

Reject data received by the machine from a computer with a specified IPv4 address. **©Restricting Communication by Using** Firewalls



Network Settings

Make settings related to network functions.

TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings for using the machine in a TCP/IP network, such as IP address settings.

IPv4 Settings

Specify settings for using the machine in an IPv4 network. Setting IPv4 Address Configuring DNS

IP Address Settings	
Auto Acquire	
Select Protocol	
Off	
DHCP ⁺	
BOOTP	
RARP	
Auto IP	
On t	
Off	
IP Address	
Subnet Mask	
Gateway Address	
DNS Settings	
Primary DNS Server Address	
Secondary DNS Server Address	
4	

Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off† On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On t mDNS Name **DHCP Option Settings** Acquire Host Name Off On t DNS Dynamic Update Off[†] On

IPv6 Settings

Specify settings for using the machine in an IPv6 network. Setting IPv6 Addresses Oconfiguring DNS

IP Address Settings Use IPV6 Off On Stateless Address Off On IP Address Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off Onf Onf Host Name DMS Dynamic Update Offf On Register Stateful Address Off On Register Stateful Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On DNS Name as IPv4	
Use IPv6 Off On Stateless Address Off On IP Address Off On IP Address Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On Name Domain Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off On Register Manual Address Off On Register Stateful Address Off On Register Stateful Address Off On Register Stateful Address Off On Register Stateful Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24° to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On	IP Address Settings
Off* On Stateless Address Off On* Use Manual Address Off* On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64* to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off* On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On* Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off* On Register Stateful Address Off* On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS On* Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On*	
On Stateless Address Off On* Use Manual Address Off* On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64* to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off* On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Descondary DNS Server Address Descondary DNS Server Address Decondary DNS Server Address Decondary DNS Server Address Off On Off Off Off Off Off Off Off Off On Register Manual Address Offf On Register Stateful Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mont Use Same	
Stateless Address Off On + Use Manual Address Off+ On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64+ to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off+ On + Host Name Domain Name Doms State Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domsin Name Doms Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On BNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24+ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On + Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On + Off On + DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24+ to 48 (hours)	
Off On Use Manual Address Off On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64* to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Descondary DNS Server Address Descondary DNS Server Address Descondary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Off On Off On Off On Off On Register Manual Address Off On Register Stateful Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mDNS Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours)	
Önt Use Manual Address Offt On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64 + to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Offt On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off Ont Host Name Domain Name Domsin Name Domsin Name Domsin Name Domsin Name Domsin Name Onft On Register Manual Address Offt On Register Stateless Address Offt On Register Stateless Address Offt On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off Ont Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4	
Use Manual Address Off+ On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64 * to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCV6 Off+ On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 * to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Use mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	
Off* On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64* to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off* On DNS Sectings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On* Host Name Domain Name Domain Name Domain Name Domain Name Domain Name Off* On Register Stateful Address Off* On Register Stateful Address Off* On Register Stateful Address Off* On Register Stateless Address Off* On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On* Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off	
On IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64* to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off- On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off- On+ Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On+ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off	Use Manual Address
IP Address Prefix Length: 0 to 64 ⁺ to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺ Host Name Domain Name Domain Name Domain Name Domain Update Off ⁺ On Register Stateful Address Off ⁺ On Register Stateful Address Off ⁺ On Register Stateless Address Off ⁺ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	Off ⁺
Prefix Length: 0 to 64 * to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On * Host Name DONS Dynamic Update Off + On Register Manual Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateless Address Off + On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 * to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On + Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	On
Prefix Length: 0 to 64 * to 128 Default Router Address Use DHCPv6 Off On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On * Host Name Domain Name DNS pynamic Update Off * On Register Manual Address Off * On Register Stateful Address Off * On Register Stateful Address Off * On Register Stateless Address Off * On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 * to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On * Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On *	IP Address
Default Router Address Use DPICPv6 Off+ On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off- On+ Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On NS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24+ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On+ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On+	
Use DHCPv6 Off On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off On Register Manual Address Off On Register Stateful Address Off On Register Stateless Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	Default Pouter Address
Off* On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On* Host Name DoNS Dynamic Update Off* On Register Manual Address Off* On Register Stateful Address Off* On Register Stateless Address Off* On Register Stateless Address Off* On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On* Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On*	
On DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On t Host Name DNS Dynamic Update Off t On Register Manual Address Off t On Register Stateful Address Off t On Register Stateless Address Off t On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24t to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On t Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On t	
DNS Settings Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On PNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24+ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On+ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On+	
Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off + On Register Manual Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateless Address Off + On Register Stateless Address Off + On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 + to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On + Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	On
Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off + On Register Manual Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateless Address Off + On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 + to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On + Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	
Secondary DNS Server Address Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off + On Register Manual Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateless Address Off + On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 + to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On + Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	
Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off + On Register Manual Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateless Address Off + On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 + to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On + Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	Primary DNS Server Address
Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4 Off On + Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off + On Register Manual Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateful Address Off + On Register Stateless Address Off + On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 + to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On + Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	Secondary DNS Server Address
Off On t Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off t On Register Manual Address Off t On Register Stateful Address Off t On Register Stateless Address Off t On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On t Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On t	
On ⁺ Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off ⁺ On Register Manual Address Off ⁺ On Register Stateful Address Off ⁺ On Register Stateless Address Off ⁺ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	
Host Name Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24† to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On† Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On †	
Domain Name DNS Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On+ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On +	
DNS Dynamic Update Off+ On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24+ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On+ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On+	
Off* On Register Manual Address Off* On Register Stateful Address Off* On Register Stateless Address Off* On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24* to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On* Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On*	
On Register Manual Address Off+ On Register Stateful Address Off+ On Register Stateless Address Off+ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24+ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On+ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On+	
Register Manual Address Off ⁺ On Register Stateful Address Off ⁺ On Register Stateless Address Off ⁺ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	
Off * On Register Stateful Address Off * On Register Stateless Address Off * On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 * to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On * Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On *	
On Register Stateful Address Off ⁺ On Register Stateless Address Off ⁺ On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	
Register Stateful Address Off On Register Stateless Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	Off ⁺
Off On Register Stateless Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	On
Off On Register Stateless Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	Register Stateful Address
On Register Stateless Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	
Register Stateless Address Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	On
Off On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	
On DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	
DNS Dynamic Update Interval: 0 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours) mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On ⁺ Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On ⁺	
mDNS Settings Use mDNS Off On † Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On †	
Use mDNS Off On † Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On †	Divis Dynamic Optace Interval. 0 to 24 to 46 (notis)
Use mDNS Off On † Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On †	mDNE Sottings
Off On † Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On †	
On † Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On †	
Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4 Off On †	
Off On †	
On t	
mDNS Name	
	mDNS Name

WINS Settings

Specify settings for Windows Internet Name Service (WINS), which provides a NetBIOS name for IP address resolutions in a mixed network environment of NetBIOS and TCP/IP. **Configuring WINS**

WINS Resolution Off⁺ On WINS Server Address Scope ID

LPD Print Settings

Enable or disable LPD, a printing protocol that can be used on any hardware platform or operating system. Configuring Printing Protocols and Web Services

Use LPD Printing Off On t

NetBIOS Settings

Set a NetBIOS name and a workgroup name, which must be set to register this machine with a WINS server. **Configuring NetBIOS**

NetBIOS Name Workgroup Name

RAW Print Settings

Enable or disable RAW, a Windows specific printing protocol. OConfiguring Printing Protocols and Web Services

Use RAW Printing Off On[†]

WSD Settings

Enable or disable automatic browsing and acquiring information for the machine by using the WSD protocol that is available on Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012. Configuring Printing Protocols and Web Services

Use WSD Printing Off On†
Use WSD Browsing Off On†
Use Multicast Discovery Off On †

SSL Settings

Specify the key pair to use when conducting SSL encrypted communication with the Remote UI. **Descripted Communication for the Remote UI**

Multicast Discovery Settings

Specify whether the machine should respond to discovery packets when multicast discovery is performed on the network using Service Location Protocol (SLP). Configuring SLP Communication with imageWARE

Respond to Discovery Off On† Scope Name

Port Number Settings

Change port numbers for protocols according to your network environment. **OChanging Port Numbers**

LPD 1 to 515† to 65535
RAW 1 to 9100† to 65535
HTTP 1 to 80 ⁺ to 65535
SNMP 1 to 161 ⁺ to 65535
WSD Multicast Discovery 1 to 3702 + to 65535
Multicast Discovery 1 to 427 ⁺ to 65535

MTU Size Settings

Select the maximum size of packets the machine sends or receives. OChanging the Maximum Transmission Unit

SNTP Settings

Specify whether to acquire the time from a time server on the network. **Configuring SNTP**

Use SNTP Off†	
On	
NTP Server Name	
Polling Interval: 1 to 24 ⁺ to 48 (hours)	

SNMP Settings

Specify the settings for monitoring and controlling the machine from a computer running SNMP-compatible software. **Omnitoring** and Controlling the Machine with SNMP

SNMPv1 Settings
Use SNMPv1
Off
On t
Community Name 1
MIB Access Permission 1
Read/Write [†]
Read Only
Community Name 2
MIB Access Permission 2
Read/Write [†]
Read Only
Dedicated Community Settings
Off
Read/Write [†]
Read Only
SNMPv3 Settings
Use SNMPv3
Off
On†
User Settings 1/User Settings 2/User Settings 3
Context Settings
Printer Management Information Acquisition Settings Acquire Printer Management Information from Host Off t

On

Dedicated Port Settings

Enable or disable the dedicated port. The dedicated port is used when using the Printer Status Window to make machine settings and acquire information about the machine.

Use Dedicated Port Off On⁺



Log on to the Remote UI in System Manager Mode (**Starting the Remote UI**) > [Settings/Registration] > [Network Settings] > [Dedicated Port Settings] > [Edit] > Select whether to use > [OK] > Restart the machine

A		
C 8 http://182.068.0.215/m_set		P-26X 0 0 0
LIPG010wr6010w	(LIP6030w/6010w)	To Portal Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration		Mail to System Manager
Preferences = Display Settings	Settings/Registration System Management Settings Netwo Settings	ark Settings > Dedicated Port Settings > Edit Dedicated Port
Timer Settings	Edit Dedicated Port Settings	
AdjustmentMaintenance Utility Menu	Change the following settings. Changes will be effective after the main power is turned	CFF and ON.
System Management Settings System Management		OK Cancel
Security Settings	Dedicated Port Settings	
B Network Settings	Use Dedicated Port	
Initialize Setting Information	*	
		Dopyright OAVGN INC. 2013

[Use Dedicated Port]

Select the check box to use the dedicated port. Clear the check box if you do not want to use it.

IMPORTANT:

If you clear the check box, the Printer Status Window cannot acquire machine information.

Waiting Time for Connection at Startup

Specify a wait time for connecting to a network. Select the setting depending on your network environment. Setting a Wait Time for Connecting to a Network

Waiting Time 0[†] to 300 (seconds)

Wireless LAN Settings 🔽

You can check wireless LAN settings and status information. Wireless LAN settings cannot be changed from the Remote UI. Make wireless LAN settings from the computer using the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool. (©Connecting to a Wireless LAN)

Log on to the Remote UI in System Manager Mode (Starting the Remote UI) > [Settings/Registration] > [Network Settings] > [Wireless LAN Settings] > Check settings and information

C 8 http://182.068.0.215/m_netv			P+16X 0 0 0
LIP6030wr6010w	L0P5030w/5010w/		To Portel Login User: System Manager Log Out
Settings/Registration			Mail to System Manager
Preferences	Settings/Registration: System Marager	ment Settings: Network Settings	> Wireless LAN Settings
Display Settings	Wireless LAN Settings	15	
Timer Settings			
AdjustmentMaintenance	Wireless LAN Information		
Utility Menu	MAC Address:	24-0A-64-28-AE-73	
System Management Settings	Wireless LAN Status	Good	
System Management	Latest Error Information:	No errora.	
B Security Settings	Channel:	11	
Network Settings	SSID Settings		
Initialize Setting Information	SSID Settings:	0024450E5D68-1	
	Security Settings		
	Security:	WPAWPA2-P5K	
	WPA/WPA2-P5K Settings		
	Encryption for WPA/WPA2:	Auto	
	WPA/WPA2-P5K-		
	×		
	*		
			Copyright CAVON INC. 2013

[MAC Address]

Displays the MAC address of the wireless LAN.

[Wireless LAN Status]

Displays the connection status (signal strength) of the wireless LAN.

[Latest Error Information]

Displays information about the latest failure to make a wireless LAN connection.

[Channel]

Displays the wireless LAN channel that is currently in use.

[SSID Settings]

Displays the SSID of the connected wireless LAN router.

[Security Settings]

Displays the type of encryption that is currently being applied.

Initialize Setting Information

Initializes settings and returns the machine to the factory default state.

Initialize Menu

Returns the settings in the [Preferences] Menu to the factory default settings. OInitializing Preferences Settings

Initialize System Management Settings

Returns the settings in the [System Management Settings] Menu to the factory default settings. OInitializing System Management Settings

Initialize Key and Certificate

Returns key and certificate settings to the factory default settings. [2] Initializing Key and Certificate Settings

Troubleshooting

When a problem occurs, check this chapter to find out solutions before contacting Canon.

Paper Jams

If the paper jams, see **OClearing Paper Jams** to remove the jammed paper.



A Message Appears

If the Printer Status Window displays an error message, see **O**When an Error Message Appears.



Common Problems

If you suspect that the machine is malfunctioning, see the following sections before contacting Canon.



Common Problems Installation/Settings Problems Printing Problems

Printing Results are Not Satisfactory

If printing results are not satisfactory, see **OWhen You Cannot Print Properly**.



When a Problem Cannot Be Solved

If a problem persists, see the following to find out where to contact. OWhen a Problem Cannot Be Solved



Clearing Paper Jams

If paper jams, <Paper Jam inside Printer> is displayed in the Printer Status Window. Use the following procedure to remove the jammed paper. Before starting, carefully read the safety instructions in **OImportant Safety Instructions**.



IMPORTANT

When removing the jammed paper, do not turn OFF the machine

Turning OFF the machine deletes the data that is being printed.

If paper tears

Remove all the paper fragments to prevent them from becoming jammed.

If paper jams repeatedly

- Tap the paper stack on a flat surface to even the edges of the paper before loading it into the machine.
- Oheck that the paper is appropriate for the machine. OPaper
- Oheck that no jammed paper fragments remain in the machine.

Do not forcibly remove jammed paper from the machine

Forcibly removing the paper may damage parts in the machine. If you are not able to remove the paper, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line. **OWhen a Problem Cannot Be Solved**

NOTE

If you click [Troubleshooting Details], you can display the same troubleshooting methods that are described in this manual.

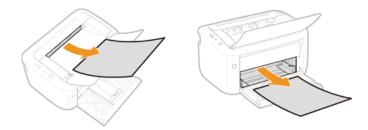


How to Clear Paper Jams

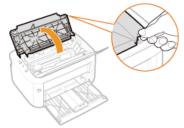
If there is paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray, remove it first. If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to pull it out forcibly. Proceed to the next step.

1 Gently pull out the paper.

Pull the paper straight out.



- 2 Check whether paper is jammed inside the machine.
 - **1** Open the top cover.

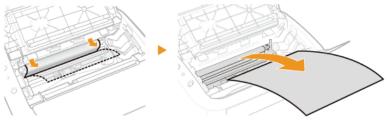


2 Remove the toner cartridge.



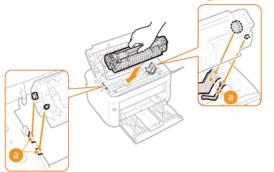
3 Gently pull out the paper.

Hold both edges of the paper, pull the leading edge of the paper down, and then pull it out.



4 Replace the toner cartridge.

Align with the toner cartridge guide (6), and push firmly all the way in.



- **5** Close the top cover.
- The paper jam message disappears, and the machine is ready to print.

When an Error Message Appears

An error message appears in the Printer Status Window when there is a problem with print processing, when the machine cannot communicate, or when some other problem prevents normal operation. See the following list for more information about error messages.

Bidirectional communication is not enabled.

Enable bidirectional communication, and restart the computer.
 Checking Bidirectional Communication

In a terminal connection environment, the machine is redirected and a setting problem prevents communication.

If the machine has been redirected in a terminal connection environment, such as a remote desktop application or XenAPP (MetaFrame), there may be a problem with firewall or other settings that prevents communication with the machine. Check the communication settings of the server and client. For details, contact your network administrator.

Cannot Communicate with Server

Your computer is not connected to the print server.

Make the proper connection between your computer and the print server.

The print server is not running.

Start the print server.

The machine is not shared.

Make the proper printer sharing settings.
 Printer Driver Installation Guide

You lack user rights to connect to the print server.

Ask the administrator of the print server to change your user rights.

[Network discovery] is not enabled. (Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012)

Enable [Network discovery].
 Carbon Enabling [Network discovery]

Check Paper

The paper size that was set in the printer driver is different from the paper size of the last print job.

When you try printing with the machine after changing the paper size setting, this message is displayed to prompt you to check the paper size. Check the size of the paper that is loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

When the paper size specified in the printer driver matches, or when you want to print using the currently loaded paper

Without loading new paper, press the 🛓 (Paper) key, or click 📄 in the Printer Status Window.

When the paper size specified in the printer driver does not match Load paper of the specified size, and press the ↓ (Paper) key on the machine. ↓ Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray \mathbf{T}



The job may not be printed normally.

can be clicked to continue printing. If you continue printing and the results are not satisfactory, print the job again.

Check Printer

The toner cartridge is not set.

Set the toner cartridge correctly.
 OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges

There is paper from a paper jam left inside the machine.

Thoroughly check for fragments of paper that may be left inside the machine. If you find any, remove them. If the paper is difficult to remove, do not try to forcibly pull it out of the machine. Follow the instructions in the manual to remove paper.

Clearing Paper Jams

Communication Error

The machine is not connected with a USB cable.

Connect the machine to your computer using a USB cable.
 Printer Driver Installation Guide

The machine is not turned ON.

The (Power) indicator does not light if the machine is not turned ON. Turn it ON. If the machine does not respond when you press the power switch, check to make sure that the power cord is connected correctly and then try again to turn the power ON.

©Turning the Power ON

Incompatible Printer

A printer other than this machine is connected.

Make the proper connection between your computer and the machine.
 Connecting to a Wireless LAN

NOTE

If you are not sure on how to make a USB connection, see Printer Driver Installation Guide.

 \mathbf{T}

 \mathbf{T}

 \mathbf{T}

The machine is connected to an unsupported port.

Check the port.
Checking the Printer Port

NOTE

If the port you need is not available

- If you are using a network connection, configure the port. OCONFIGURING Printer Ports
- If you are using a USB connection, reinstall the printer driver. Printer Driver Installation Guide

Insufficient Printer Memory

The document being printed contains a page with a very large amount of data.

This machine cannot print the data. Click [14] to cancel the print job.

Network Communication Error

The machine is not connected via the network.

Make the proper network connection between your computer and the machine.
 Connecting to a Wireless LAN

The machine is not turned ON.

The () (Power) indicator does not light if the machine is not turned ON. Turn it ON. If the machine does not respond when you press the power switch, check to make sure that the power cord is connected correctly and then try again to turn the power ON.
 Turning the Power ON

Communication is restricted by a firewall.

- Ask the system manager of the machine about the problem.
 Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls
- If the machine cannot be accessed because of incorrect settings, use the (n) (Wi-Fi) key to initialize the system management settings.

OInitializing by Using the Wi-Fi Key

Out of Paper or Paper Could Not be Fed

There is no paper in the multi-purpose tray. Or the paper could not be fed.

Set the paper correctly, and then press the
 (Paper) key on the machine.
 (Dading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Paper Jam inside Printer

There is a paper jam inside the machine.

Do not try to forcibly pull jammed paper out of the machine. Follow the instructions in the manual to remove paper.

 \mathbf{T}

Service Error

An error has occurred inside the machine.

- Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON. If the message does not reappear, you can continue using the machine.
- If the same message reappears after you turn the power back ON, turn the power OFF, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer. Make a note of the error code that is displayed, and have it ready when you contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



Top Cover Open

 $\mathbf{\Sigma}$

The top cover is not completely shut.

Shut the top cover firmly.



NOTE

If the top cover will not close completely, check to make sure that the toner cartridge has been pushed all the way in.

Common Problems

If you encounter problems when using the machine, check the items in this section before contacting us. If the problems persist, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

Check the Following

- → Is the machine turned ON? / Is the power cord connected?
 - The () (Power) indicator does not light if the machine is not turned ON. If the machine does not respond when you press the power switch, check to make sure that the power cord is connected correctly and then try again to turn the power ON.
 Turning the Power ON
- → Is the machine connected via wireless LAN (LBP6030w only) or a USB cable?
 - Check whether the machine is connected correctly. In the case of wireless LAN, check whether the ((n) (Wi-Fi) indicator is lit. If it is not lit, the machine is not connected via wireless LAN.
 When the machine cannot connect to the wireless LAN
- Does the Printer Status Window display an error message?
 - If a problem occurs, a message is displayed in the window.
 Printer Status Window
 When an Error Message Appears

If a problem persists even after checking

Click the link that corresponds to the problem.

Installation/Settings Problems
 Printing Problems

Installation/Settings Problems

Together with this section, see **Common Problems**.

Problems with the Wireless LAN Connection (LBP6030w)
 Problems with the USB Connection
 Problems via the Print Server

Problems with the Wireless LAN Connection (LBP6030w)

Remote UI is not displayed.

The (m) (Wi-Fi) indicator lights if a connection has been established. Check whether it is lit, and whether IP addresses are correct. Then try to start the Remote UI again.
 Front Side

Viewing Network Settings

- Are you using a proxy server? If you are using a proxy server, add the machine's IP address to the [Exceptions] list (addresses that do not use the proxy server) in the Web browser's proxy settings dialog.
- Is communication on your computer restricted by a firewall? If the Remote UI cannot be displayed because of incorrect settings, use the (h) (Wi-Fi) key to initialize the system management settings.
 Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls

OInitializing by Using the Wi-Fi Key

A connection to a network cannot be established.

Check whether the machine is properly installed and ready to connect to the network.
 When the machine cannot connect to the wireless LAN

You are unsure of the IP address that was set.

OViewing Network Settings

When the machine cannot connect to the wireless LAN



Check the status of your computer

- Have the settings of the computer and the wireless router been completed?
- Are the cables of the wireless router (including the power cord and LAN cable) correctly plugged in?
- Is the wireless router turned ON?

If the problem persists even after checking the above:

- Turn OFF all of the devices, and then turn them ON again.
- Wait for a while, and try again to connect to the network.



Check whether the machine is turned ON

- \bullet The (Power) indicator does not light if the machine is not turned ON.
- If the machine is turned ON, turn it OFF, and then turn it back ON.





Check the installation site of the machine and the wireless router

- Is the machine too far from the wireless router?
- Are there any obstacles such as walls between the machine and the wireless router?
- Are there any appliances such as microwave ovens or digital cordless phones that emit radio waves near the machine?





Reset the wireless LAN settings Connecting to a Wireless LAN

NOTE

When you need to manually set up the connection

If the wireless router is set up as described below, enter the required information manually.

- The stealth function is enabled.
- ANY connection refusal* is enabled.
- The WEP key number to use is set to a number from 2 to 4.
- The automatically generated WEP key (hexadecimal) is selected.
- * A function in which the wireless router refuses the connection if the SSID of the device to be connected is set to "ANY" or is blank.

When you need to change the settings of the wireless router

If the wireless router is set up as described below, change the settings of the router.

- MAC address filtering is enabled.
- When only IEEE 802.11n is used for the wireless communication, WEP is selected or the WPA/WPA2 encryption method is set to TKIP.

Problems with the USB Connection

Communication is not possible.

- Exchange the USB cable. If the USB cable is a long one, exchange it for a shorter one.
- If you are using a USB hub, connect the machine directly to your computer using a USB cable.

Problems via the Print Server

You cannot find the print server to connect to.

- Are the print server and computer connected correctly?
- Is the print server running?
- Do you have user rights to connect to the print server? If you are not sure, consult the print server's administrator.
- Is [Network discovery] enabled? (Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012)
 Enabling [Network discovery]

You cannot connect to a shared printer.

- On the network, does the machine appear among the printers of the print server? If it is not displayed, contact the network or server administrator.
 - ODisplaying Shared Printers in the Print Server

Printing Problems

Together with this section, see **Common Problems**. For problems related to connection with the computer, see **DInstallation/Settings Problems**.

Printing results are not satisfactory, or the paper is curled or wrinkled.

OWhen You Cannot Print Properly

You cannot print.

- Can you print a Windows test page? If you can print a Windows test page, there is no problem with the machine or the printer driver. Check the print settings of your application.
 Printing a Test Page in Windows
 - If you cannot print a test page, check the following according to your environment.
 - Wireless LAN connection 🔽
 - Check the connection status (signal strength) of the wireless LAN.
 Viewing Network Settings

NOTE:

If the connection is poor, try the following.

- Change the channel of your wireless LAN router. If you have more than one router, set the channels to be at least five channels apart.
- If you can change the radio output power of your wireless LAN router, raise the output power.
- If your computer is connected to the wireless LAN, are the computer and this machine using the same wireless LAN router SSID? If they are different, reset the wireless LAN connection settings of this machine.

Viewing Network Settings Checking the SSID to Which Your Computer Is Connected

Connecting to a Wireless LAN

NOTE:

When you reset wireless LAN connection settings

- When making settings with the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool, select [Easy Setup] ▶ [My wireless LAN access point does not have a WPS button or I cannot find the button].
- As the wireless LAN router, select the one with the SSID to which the computer is connected.
- Have you selected the correct port? If there is no port to use, create a port.

Checking the Printer Port Configuring Printer Ports

- Is communication on your computer restricted by a firewall? If the machine cannot be accessed because of incorrect settings, use the (m) (Wi-Fi) key to initialize the system management settings.
 Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls
 Initializing by Using the Wi-Fi Key
- Disable security software and other resident software.
- Reinstall the printer driver. Printer Driver Installation Guide
- Can you print from other computers on the network? If you also cannot print from other computers, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

USB connection

- Have you selected the correct port? If there is no port to use or you are not sure, reinstall the printer driver. When you reinstall the printer driver, the correct port is created automatically.
 Checking the Printer Port
 Printer Driver Installation Guide
- Is bidirectional communication enabled? Enable bidirectional communication, and restart the computer.
 Checking Bidirectional Communication
- Disable security software and other resident software.
- Connect to another USB port on the computer.
- Delete the USB class driver, and then reinstall the printer driver.
 Printer Driver Installation Guide
- Can you print from a USB connection to another computer? If you also cannot print from other computers, contact

Via print server

- Can you print from the print server? If you can print from the print server, check the connection between your computer and the print server.
 Problems via the Print Server
- Disable security software and other resident software.
- Reinstall the printer driver.
 Printer Driver Installation Guide
- Can you print from other computers via the print server? If you also cannot print from other computers, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

It takes a long time before printing starts.

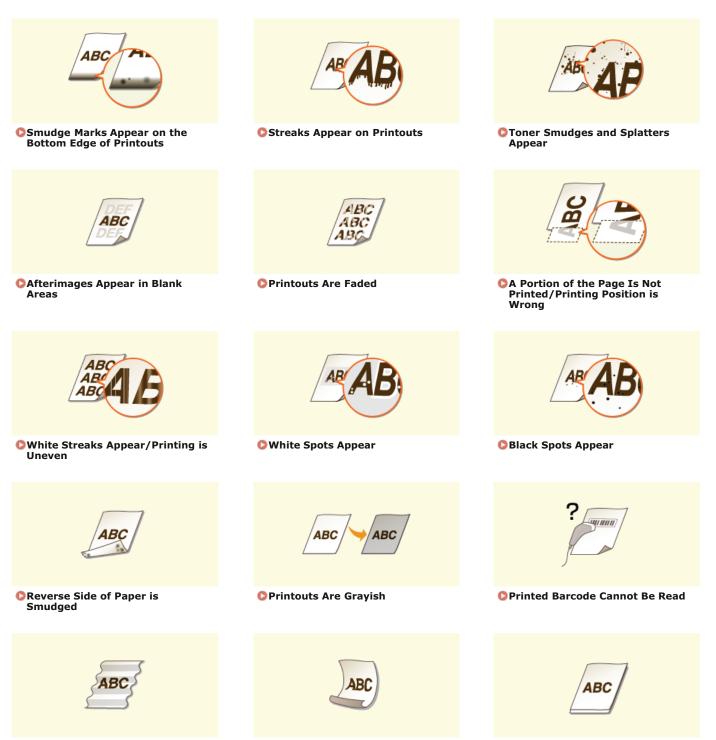
Did you print on narrow paper? After you print to narrow width paper, the machine may wait until the temperature inside the machine has fallen before resuming printing. This is done to maintain printing quality. As a result, it may take some time before the next job is printed. Wait until the machine is ready to print. Printing will resume when the temperature inside the machine has fallen.

A blank sheet is output (nothing is printed).

Did you pull the sealing tape out when loading the toner cartridge? If you did not pull it out, remove the toner cartridge, pull the sealing tape out, and reload the toner cartridge.
 How to Replace Toner Cartridges

When You Cannot Print Properly

If printing results are not satisfactory, or paper creases or curls, try the following solutions. If the problems persist, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.



Paper Creases

Paper Curls

Paper Is Not Fed/Two or More Sheets Are Fed Together

Printing Results Are Not Satisfactory

Grime inside the machine may affect printing results. First try cleaning the machine. OCleaning the Machine

Smudge Marks Appear on the Bottom Edge of Printouts



Did you print data without margins, all the way to the edge of the page?

This symptom occurs if a margin is set to none in the printer driver. The range that can be printed on this machine is the range inside a 5 mm margin around the edge of the paper or a 10 mm margin around the edge of envelopes. Make sure to have margins around the document to print.

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Expand Print Region and Print] > [Off]

Streaks Appear on Printouts



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check the usable paper types, and replace with appropriate paper.
 Paper
- In the printer driver, set [Output Adjustment Mode] to [On].

[Quality] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Output Adjustment Mode] > [On]

NOTE:

Printing speed may be slower if you set the mode to [On].

In the printer driver, change the setting of [Special Print Adjustment A]. The improvement effect is weakest for [Mode 1] and strongest for [Mode 4]. Try the adjustment starting with [Mode 1].

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Special Print Adjustment A] > Select mode

NOTE:

When you select a stronger improvement effect, the overall print density becomes lighter. Also, edges may become less sharp and details may be rougher.

In the Printer Status Window, enable [Reduce Toner Spots Around Text].

ODisplaying the Printer Status Window

[Options] > [Device Settings] > [Assisting Print Settings] > Select the [Reduce Toner Spots Around Text] check box

IMPORTANT:

When you select this check box, print quality may be lower for some types of paper (especially thin paper) and some printing environments (especially environments with high humidity). In that case, clear the check box.

Turn over the paper (front to back) so that the print side is changed, and then reload the paper.

IMPORTANT

Rarely, the symptoms may worsen depending on the type of paper you are using. In that case, get the print side back to original.

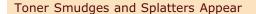
→ Toner may adhere when you replace the toner cartridge or when you leave the machine without printing for a

long period.

In the printer driver, change the setting of [Special Print Adjustment B]. The remedial effect is weakest for [Mode 1] and strongest for [Mode 3]. Try the adjustment starting with [Mode 1].

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Special Print Adjustment B] > Select mode NOTE:

When you select a stronger improvement effect, printing speed becomes slower.





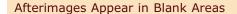
Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check the usable paper types, and replace with appropriate paper.
 Paper
- In the Printer Status Window, enable [Reduce Toner Spots Around Text].
 Displaying the Printer Status Window

[Options] > [Device Settings] > [Assisting Print Settings] > Select the [Reduce Toner Spots Around Text] check box

IMPORTANT:

When you select this check box, print quality may be lower for some types of paper (especially thin paper) and some printing environments (especially environments with high humidity). In that case, clear the check box.





Are you using appropriate paper?

Check the usable paper types, and replace with appropriate paper.
 Paper

Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.
 OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges

Printouts Are Faded



 \mathbf{T}

 \mathbf{T}



➔ Is toner running low?

Remove the toner cartridge, shake it 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge, and then

reload it into the machine. Ousing Up All of the Toner

Are you using appropriate paper?

Check the usable paper types, and replace with appropriate paper.
 Paper

➔ Have you specified the correct paper type?

- Specify the type of paper again, according to the type of paper that you are using.
 - Basic Print Operations

A Portion of the Page Is Not Printed/Printing Position is Wrong



Did you print data without margins, all the way to the edge of the page?

This symptom occurs if a margin is set to none in the printer driver. The range that can be printed on this machine is the range inside a 5 mm argin around the edge of the paper or a 10 mm margin around the edge of envelopes. Make sure to have margins around the document to print.

 \mathbf{T}

 \mathbf{T}

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Expand Print Region and Print] > [Off]

White Streaks Appear/Printing is Uneven



➔ Is toner running low?

Remove the toner cartridge, shake it 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge, and then reload it into the machine.
 Using Up All of the Toner

➔ Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.
 CHow to Replace Toner Cartridges

White Spots Appear



- Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?
 - Replace with appropriate paper.
 - Paper

- → Are you using appropriate paper?
 - Check the usable paper types, and replace with appropriate paper.
 Paper

➔ Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

- Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.
 Chow to Replace Toner Cartridges
- Are you printing a document with strong contrasts between light and dark, and does the white appear around text or edges in an image?
 - In the printer driver, set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 2].

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Special Print Mode] > [Special Settings 2]

NOTE:

Compared to the [Off] setting, the [Special Settings 2] setting selects lighter print density.

Black Spots Appear

 \mathbf{T}

 \mathbf{T}

 \mathbf{T}



Have you cleaned the fixing unit?

Clean the fixing unit.
 CFixing Unit

Reverse Side of Paper is Smudged



Have you loaded paper that is smaller than the size of the print data?

 ${\scriptstyle \bullet}$ Check to make sure that the paper size matches the size of the print data.

Printouts Are Grayish



Is the machine installed in a location where it is exposed to direct sunlight?
 Move the machine to a location where it is not exposed to direct sunlight.
 Relocating the Machine



➔ Are you trying to read a small barcode or one with thick lines?

Enlarge the barcode.

• In the printer driver, set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 1].

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Special Print Mode] > [Special Settings 1] NOTE:

When you specify [Special Settings 1], printouts may be faded.

 \mathbf{T}

Paper Creases or Curls

Paper Creases



Is the paper loaded correctly?

Paper may crease when it is not loaded below the load limit guides, or when it is loaded obliquely. **Coading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray**

→ Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

- Replace with appropriate paper.
- OPaper
- If you are using A4, Letter size, or Legal size paper, change the setting of [Wrinkle Adjustment] in the printer driver. The improvement effect is weaker for [Mode 1] and stronger for [Mode 2]. Try the adjustment starting with [Mode 1].

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Wrinkle Adjustment] > Select mode

NOTE:

Printing speed becomes slower if you select stronger improvement.

→ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check the usable paper types, and replace with appropriate paper.
 Paper
- In the printer driver, set [Output Adjustment Mode] to [On].

[Quality] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Output Adjustment Mode] > [On]

NOTE:

Printing speed may be slower if you set the mode to [On].





Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

- Replace with appropriate paper.
 Paper
- If you have set [Paper Type] to [Plain], try printing after setting [Paper Type] to [Plain L].

Basic Print Operations

NOTE:

When you set [Paper Type] to [Plain L], printouts may appear faded because toner does not adhere adequately to the paper.

In the Printer Status Window, enable [Perform Curl Correction for Output Paper].

ODisplaying the Printer Status Window

[Options] > [Device Settings] > [Assisting Print Settings] > Select the [Perform Curl Correction for Output Paper] check box

NOTE:

Printing speed may be slower when you select this check box.

If you are using A4, Letter size, or Legal size paper, change the setting of [Wrinkle Adjustment] in the printer driver. The improvement effect is weaker for [Mode 1] and stronger for [Mode 2]. Try the adjustment starting with [Mode 1].

[Finishing] tab > [Advanced Settings] > [Wrinkle Adjustment] > Select mode

NOTE:

Printing speed becomes slower if you select stronger improvement.

Are you using appropriate paper?

Check the usable paper types, and replace with appropriate paper. Paper

Paper Is Fed Incorrectly

Paper Is Not Fed/Two or More Sheets Are Fed Together



→ Is the paper loaded correctly?

- Fan the paper stack thoroughly so that the sheets are not stuck together.
- Check whether the paper is loaded correctly.
 Choading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray
- Check whether the number of sheets of paper loaded is appropriate and whether the appropriate paper is used.
 Paper
- Check whether mixed sizes and types of paper are loaded together.

When a Problem Cannot Be Solved

If a problem cannot be resolved, contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.

IMPORTANT

Do not disassemble or repair the machine yourself

If you disassemble or repair the machine yourself, it may not be covered by warranty.

■When Contacting Canon

When contacting us, have the following information ready.

- Product name (LBP6030w / LBP6030B / LBP6030)
- Dealer where you purchased the machine
- Details about your problem (such as what you did, what happened as a result, and any messages that were displayed)
- Serial number (10 alphanumeric characters long, found on the label on the back side of the machine)



Serial No. XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	

Maintenance

This chapter describes upkeep of the machine, including how to clean the machine and print setting lists.

Basic Maintenance Cleaning the Machine



- The machine becomes dirty OExterior
- Smudge marks appear on printouts SFixing Unit

Replacing Toner Cartridges OReplacing Toner Cartridges



- If you want to use all of the toner OUsing Up All of the Toner
- How to replace toner cartridges OHOW to Replace Toner Cartridges

Printing Setting Lists



If you want to print a list of machine settings OPrinting Setting Lists

Checking the Total Pages Printed by the Machine

If you want to check the total number of pages printed by the machine OViewing the Page Counter Value

Initializing Settings LBP6030w

If you want to restore settings to the factory defaults **[] Initializing Settings**

Relocating the Machine

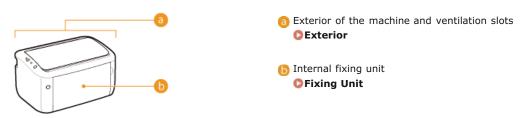


If you want to relocating the machine for maintenance or an office move ORelocating the Machine

Cleaning the Machine

Clean the machine regularly to prevent deterioration in printing quality and to ensure safe and trouble-free operation. Carefully read the safety instructions before you start cleaning. **OMaintenance and Inspections**

Where to Clean



Exterior

Regularly wipe the exterior of the machine to keep it in good condition. Wipe the ventilation slots regularly to keep it free of dust.

1 Turn OFF the machine, and unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

. When you turn OFF the machine, data that is waiting to be printed is deleted.

2 Wipe the exterior of the machine and the ventilation slots.

- Use a soft, well-wrung-out cloth dampened with water or a mild detergent diluted with water.
- For the location of the ventilation slots, see OBack Side.



- **3** Wait for the exterior of the machine to dry completely.
- 4 Plug the power cord back into the AC power outlet.

Fixing Unit

Dirt may adhere to the fixing unit inside the machine and cause smudges and black streaks to appear on printouts. If this occurs, proceed as follows to clean the fixing unit. Note that you cannot clean the fixing when the machine has documents waiting to be printed. To clean the fixing unit, you need normal A4 size paper. Before starting, load A4 size paper in the multi-purpose tray. **C**Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray





2 Select [Options] [Utility] [Cleaning].

0 0	lptions Help	-		
	Preferences (Users)	- 1		
_	Preferences (Administrators) Counter Information Wireless LAN Status			
۰.				
	USility	-	Cleaning	^
	Device Settings		Configuration Page Print	
	Management Settings	-	Network Status Print	
	Remote UI		Troubleshooting Del	alt.
	Refresh			

3 Click [OK].



The paper is fed slowly into the machine, and cleaning starts. The cleaning is done when the paper is completely ejected.

Cleaning cannot be cancelled once it starts. Wait until it finishes (approx. 140 seconds).

NOTE

Cleaning from the Remote UI

You can also clean the fixing unit from the [Utility Menu] page of the Remote UI. OCleaning

Replacing Toner Cartridges

No warning message appears, even when toner begins to run low. Use the printout symptoms described below as a guide to when to replace the toner cartridge. **OHOW to Replace Toner Cartridges**



NOTE

When, of the above symptoms, one of "White streaks appear," "Faded," and "Uneven density" appears, you may be able to continue printing for a while longer by taking the steps in **Ousing Up All of the Toner**.

TIPS

You can specify that a message like the one shown below be displayed when print quality cannot be guaranteed because the toner cartridge has reached its lifetime or for some other reason. This allows you to avoid the waste of poor-quality printouts, because you are notified in advance when the time comes to replace the toner cartridge.

-	
Lanon LBP6030/6040/6018L	
Job Options Help	
🗌 🛟 🖗 🥵	
Carnot gas Between	eardy to Print asserties print quality because the toner catridge is anaching the end of its to the catridge with a new toner catridge is reconversed altotection means for near information in how is applied a litterer catridge. Transformation of the set of the
lifetime, etc. Replacing this tone	print quality because the toner cartridge is reaching the end of its er cartridge with a new toner cartridge is recommended. In manual for more information on how to replace a toner cartridge.
1	Select the machine by clicking 🚇 in the system tray.
±	
	Canon LEP0302/04/4018L
	Customize.
2	Select [Options] [Device Settings] [Warning Display Settings].
<u> </u>	
	La Caron 1993376446,95181
	Job Options: Help
	Primiria (dani) Primiria (dani)
	Counter Information
	USEY · ·
	Device Settings
	Management Settings + Sleep Settings *
	Remote UE Autor Studiences Settions .
	Warning Display Settings
	Assting Pint Settings
	User Name.
3	Select the [Display End of Toner Cartridge Lifetime Warning] check box and click [OK]
5	Select the [Display Fild of Toher Carthage Electine Warning] check box and click [OK]



IMPORTANT

- You can continue printing when this message is displayed, but the print quality may deteriorate.
- Even if this message is not displayed, use the symptoms listed at the top of this page as a guide to replacing toner cartridges. Replace the toner cartridge when a symptom appears.

LINKS

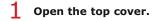
Consumables

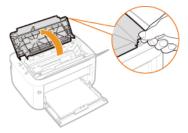
Using Up All of the Toner

Printout symptoms like the following appear when toner begins to run low.



When symptoms like these appear, take the following steps. They will allow you to use up all of the toner in the toner cartridge. You will be able to continue printing for a while longer, until the toner runs out completely. If the symptoms do not improve after you take the following steps, replace the toner cartridge (**Chow to Replace Toner Cartridges**). Before starting, read the safety instructions in **Chaintenance and Inspections** and **Consumables**.





2 Remove the toner cartridge.

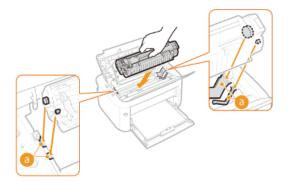


3 Shake the toner cartridge 5 or 6 times as shown below to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge.



4 Replace the toner cartridge.

Align with the toner cartridge guide (
(), and push firmly all the way in.





How to Replace Toner Cartridges

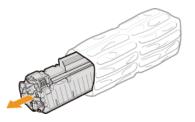
Before replacing a toner cartridge, read the precautions in **OMaintenance and Inspections** and **OConsumables**.



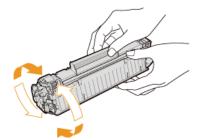
2 Remove the toner cartridge.



3 Remove the new toner cartridge from the protective bag.

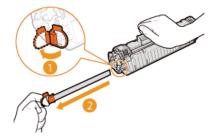


4 Shake the toner cartridge 5 or 6 times as shown below to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge, and then place it on a flat surface.



5 Pull the sealing tape straight out.

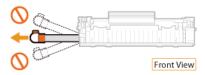
• The full length of the sealing tape is approximately 50 cm.



IMPORTANT:

When pulling out the sealing tape

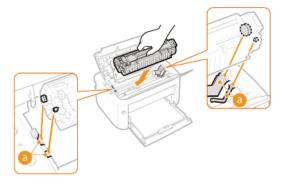
- If any sealing tape remains inside the toner cartridge, print quality may deteriorate.
- Do not pull the sealing tape at an angle. If the sealing tape breaks, you may not be able to pull it out completely.



• If the sealing tape becomes stuck when pulling it out, keep pulling until it is completely removed.

6 Replace the toner cartridge.

Align with the toner cartridge guide (6), and push firmly all the way in.



7 Close the top cover.

Printing Setting Lists

You can print setting lists from the Printer Status Window. This is convenient when you want to print a list of network settings or a list of power saving and other configuration settings for the machine. Setting lists are formatted to print on A4 size paper. Before starting, load A4 size paper in the multi-purpose tray. **Coloring Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray**



2 Select [Options] > [Utility] > [Configuration Page Print] or [Network Status Print].

0 0	lptions Help			
	Preferences (Users) Preferences (Administrators)	ł		
1	Counter Information Wireless LAN Status			
10	Utility	- 1 C	Cleaning.	^
2	Device Settings	-	Configuration Page Print	
	Management Settings	-	Network Status Print	
	Remote UE	Ĩ	Troubleshooting De	tals.
	Refresh			

[Configuration Page Print]

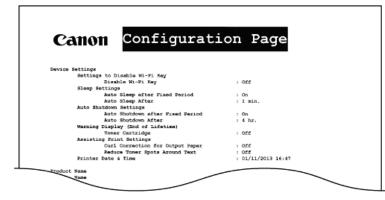
Prints a list of the settings under [Options] > [Device Settings] together with machine version information.

[Network Status Print] (LBP6030w)

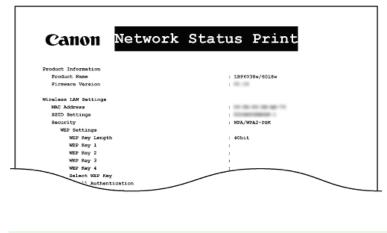
Prints a list of the network settings of the machine.



Output example: [Configuration Page Print]



Output example: [Network Status Print]



NOTE

You can also use the machine's \downarrow (Paper) key to print and view a list of the machine's IPv4 settings, MAC address, wireless LAN settings, and version information. **Viewing Network Settings**

Viewing the Page Counter Value

You can check the total number of pages that the machine has printed by viewing the page counter in the Printer Status Window.

1 Select the machine by clicking 🚇 in the system tray.



2 Select [Options] ▶ [Counter Information].

b 🔽	ptions Help			
	Preferences (Users) Preferences (Administrators)			
10	Counter Information			
ł	Wireless LAN Status Utility	:		*
2	Device Settings Management Settings	;		
	Remote UE		Trou	leshooting Details.
	Refresh			

 \Rightarrow The total number of printed pages is displayed.

Counter Information	*
Counter Total Printed Pages:	5
	OK Help

Initializing Settings LBP6030w

You can restore the machine's settings to the factory default settings.

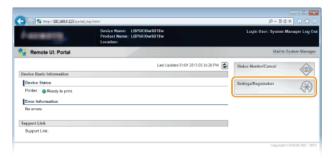
Initializing Preferences Settings
 Initializing System Management Settings
 Initializing Key and Certificate Settings

Initializing Preferences Settings LBP6030w

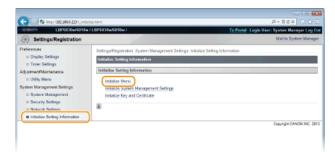
You can initialize the settings of the Remote UI [Preferences] menu (**Setting Menu List**) to return them to the factory default settings.

Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. Starting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].



3 Click [Initialize Setting Information] ▶ [Initialize Menu].



4 Select the settings to initialize, and then click [Initialize].



[Menu to Initialize]

Select the settings to initialize from the drop-down list. Select [Initialize All] to initialize both [Display Settings] and [Timer Settings].



Initializing System Management Settings LBP6030w

You can initialize the settings in the Remote UI [System Management Settings] menu (**Setting Menu List**) to return them to the factory default settings.

NOTE

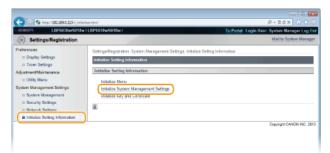
To initialize [Key and Certificate Settings] and [CA Certificate Settings] in [Security Settings], see **[Initializing Key and Certificate Settings**].

1 Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

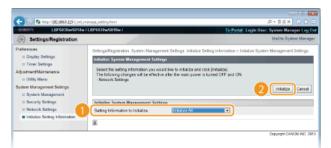
2 Click [Settings/Registration].

internet.	Device Name: Product Name: Location:	LBP5030w/5019w LBP5030w/5019w	Login User: System Manager Log
Remote UI: Portal			Mail to System Mana
		Last Updated 01/01 2015 00:34:28	PM 🔹 Status Monitos/Cancel
evice Basic Information			
Device Status			Settingu/Registration
Printer: Roady to print.			475
Error Information			
No erroru.			
epport Link			
Support Link:			

3 Click [Initialize Setting Information] > [Initialize System Management Settings].



4 Select the settings to initialize, and then click [Initialize].



[Setting Information to Initialize]

Select the settings to initialize from the drop-down list. Select [Initialize All] to initialize all of the settings in [System Manager Information], [Device Information], [Security Settings], and [Network Settings] at once.

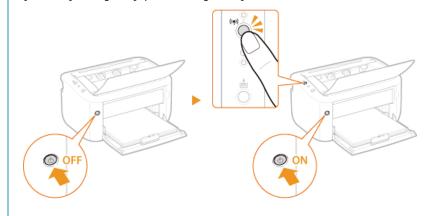


6 If you initialized the network settings, restart the machine.

• Turn OFF the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds, and turn it back ON.

Initializing by Using the Wi-Fi Key

You can use the machine's ((1) (Wi-Fi) key to initialize the machine's system management settings. If you turn OFF the machine, and then turn ON the machine while pressing the ((1) (Wi-Fi) key, all of the settings in the [System Management Settings] menu (Setting Menu List) of the Remote UI are initialized at once. However, the [System Manager Name], [Device Name], and [Location] settings of [System Management] are not initialized.



Initializing Key and Certificate Settings LBP6030w

You can restore the settings of key pairs (Key and certificate settings) and CA certificates to the factory default settings. Note that any key pairs that you have registered in the machine and any CA certificates (except the preinstalled CA certificates) will be deleted by the initialization.

NOTE

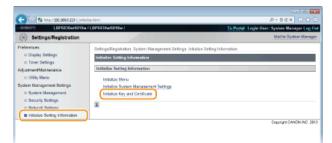
If you perform this initialization, SSL encrypted communication requiring a key pair will not be possible. To use SSL encrypted communication, set another key pair and enable the function again.

Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. OStarting the Remote UI

2 Click [Settings/Registration].

lamang.	Device Name: LBP5030w/5013w Product Name: LBP5030w/5013w Location:	Login User: System Manaper Log (
🔓 Remote UI: Portal		Mail to System Manag
	Lett Update	od 01:01 2015 03 34 26 PM 🙆 Blatus Monitor/Cancel
Jevice Basic Information		
Device Status		SettinguRegistration
Printet: Roady to print.		477
Error Information		
No errore.		
iepport Link		
Support Link:		

3 [Initialize Setting Information] > [Initialize Key and Certificate].



4 Click [Initialize].



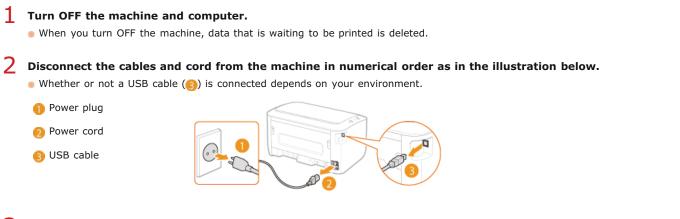




Configuring Settings for Key Pairs and Digital Certificates

Relocating the Machine

The machine is heavy. To avoid injury, be sure to follow the procedure below when moving the machine. Also be sure to read the safety instructions before you begin. **OImportant Safety Instructions**



If you will be transporting the machine across a long distance, remove the toner cartridge. OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges

4 Close the multi-purpose tray and output tray, and carry the machine to its new location.

To carry the machine, grasp it on both sides with the front side facing you.



5 Carefully place the machine at its new location.

For the procedure to follow after moving the machine, see the "Getting Started." OManuals Included with the Machine

Appendix

This chapter contains technical specifications of this machine, instructions on how to use the e-Manual, disclaimers, copyright information, and other information that you may need. Refer to it as required.

Feature Highlights

Give the features that are described in this section a try. The features are grouped under four headings: "Going Green and Saving Money," "Improving Efficiency," and "So Much More."

Going Green and Saving Money

Easy on the environment, easy on your wallet

There are lots of ways to cut back on paper, toner, power, and expenses.





When there are many pages in a document, the printout can be inconveniently bulky – hard to carry around and store, and also hard to read. But there is a solution. Print multiple pages onto one sheet! This allows you to save paper and make your documents slimmer and easier to handle.



For more information about this function, see **Printing Multiple Pages Onto One Sheet**.



You can save power by setting the machine to enter sleep mode automatically whenever it has not been used for a while. You don't need to turn OFF the power each time, but you can still have the machine minimize its power consumption. The auto shutdown function can boost the savings, by automatically turning OFF the machine if it remains idle for a longer time. These convenient functions work in the background to save power and money every day.



To save power by putting the machine into sleep mode: **Setting Sleep Mode**

To configure the machine to be automatically turned OFF: **Setting Auto Shutdown**



To economize on toner, you can use draft mode for drafts and test printouts. Or you can switch between modes according to purpose, using normal mode for beautiful photos and draft mode for company documents that do not require presentation quality.



For more information about this function, see **Saving Toner**.

Improving Efficiency

01



The Printer Status Window and Remote UI^{*} allow you to manage the machine remotely from the computer at your desk. You can monitor the state of the machine from your computer, and also check error information. Whenever a printing error occurs, the Printer Status Window appears automatically to notify you with easy to understand messages and animations. Save time and trouble by eliminating trips between your desk and the machine. The Remote UI makes it simple to configure the machine, including the many network setting items.

Remote Management with Printer Status Window and Remote UI

 * The Remote UI is available on the LBP6030w only.

Canon LBP6030/6040/60	18L		G 😽
Job Options Help			
🔲 🗱 🕪 😫			
	Paper Jam in: Renove the janued pap Click (Troubleshooting De		,
	Print Job Information		Troubleshooting Details .
	Document Name:	Document 1.rf	
	User Name:	User01	
	Printed Pages:	0	
			2

For more information about the Printer Status Window, see **Printer Status Window**.

For more information about the Remote UI, see **OUsing the Remote UI**.



Everyone in the office uses the printer. If you register the most popular settings as the default settings, you can use them right away. You can also register frequently used combinations of print settings as "profiles." Then you can call up your favorite settings in a single operation, by selecting a profile instead of selecting each setting every time you print.



To change default print settings: **Changing Default Settings**

To register combinations of frequently used print settings as "profiles": **ORegistering Combinations of Frequently Used Print Settings**



Save Time with Shortcuts

When you have a number of documents to print, it would be convenient to print them all with one operation. Canon PageComposer allows you to combine multiple documents and print them all at once. It is an easy way to save time and work more efficiently.

Canon PageComposer - (40/6018L - User01	
File Edit Moveto Help		, 1° 11	
Document Name	Pages	Leyout Informati Comments	
Document 1.tf	1	1 on 1	
Document 2.rtf	1	1 on 1	
Document 3.tf	1	1 on 1	
or Help, press F1.			

For more information about this function, see **OCombining and Printing Multiple Documents**.

C

So Much More



01

Keep Your Printouts Private

For personal information and sensitive documents that you want to keep private, you can print watermarks such as "CONFIDENTIAL" or "TOP SECRET." In addition to these standard watermarks, you can also design your own watermarks.



For more information about this function, see **OPrinting Watermarks**.



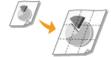
No cables, easy installation, simple maintenance. If you've got a WPS wireless LAN router, bypass the settings process altogether and be ready to go before you know it. Enjoy the kind of clutter-free and easy to use document system that you can only get from wireless. Compatible with IEEE 802.11b/g/n for stress-free wireless, and also supports WEP and WPA/WPA2-PSK (TKIP/AES-CCMP) for tighter security.



For more information about this function, see **OConnecting to a Wireless LAN**.



Blow up a regular one-sheet printout and make an exceptionally large poster. A large poster will be printed out on nine sheets. Put them together in a 3x3 grid, and voila!



For more information about this function, see **OPrinting Posters**.



Automatically Collate Meeting Handouts

When you print multiple copies of a multi-page document, you can use the collate function to print one copy after another with all of the pages in the correct order. This is convenient when preparing handouts for meetings or presentations.



For more information about this function, see **O**Collating Printouts by Page.

Specifications

Due to continuing product enhancements, the specifications of this machine are subject to change without notice.

OMachine Specifications Wireless LAN Specifications OPaper

Machine Specifications

Hardware SpecificationsSoftware Specifications

Hardware Specifications

Туре	Desktop page printer
Printing System	Semiconductor laser + dry-type electrophotographic system
Toner Fixing System	On-demand fixing system
Print Speed*1 (Plain paper (60 to 89 g/m ²), A4 continuous printing)	18 pages/minute
Warm-Up Time*2 (from power ON until machine enters standby)	10 seconds or less
Recovery Time*3 (recovery from sleep mode to standby)	1 second or less
First Print Time ^{*3} (A4 printing)	Approx. 7.8 seconds
Acceptable Paper Stock	© Paper
Paper Capacity (Multi-purpose tray)	Approx. 150 sheets
Paper Output	Face down
Output Capacity*4 (Output tray)	Approx. 100 sheets
Noise (measured in accordance with ISO 7779, declared noise emission in accordance with ISO 9296)	 LwAd (declared A-weighted sound power level (1 B = 10 dB)) During standby: Inaudible*5 During printing: 6.53 B or less LpAm (declared A-weighted sound pressure level (bystander position)) During standby: Inaudible*5 During printing: 49.3 dB
Environmental Conditions (machine only)	Operating Environment • Temperature: 10 to 30 °C • Humidity: 20 to 80% RH (no condensation)
Host Interface	LBP6030w • USB interface: Hi-Speed USB/USB • Network interface: IEEE 802.11b/g/n LBP6030B / LBP6030 • USB interface: Hi-Speed USB/USB
	LBP6030w
	•

User Interface	LED indicators: 3 • Operation keys: 2 LBP6030B / LBP6030 • LED indicators: 2 • Operation keys: 1
Power	220 to 240 V (± 10 %), 50/60 Hz (± 2 Hz)
Power Consumption*6 (20 °C)	 Maximum: 870 W or less During operation: Approx. 330 W During standby: 1.8 W or less (USB connection) 2.8 W or less (wireless LAN connection) (LBP6030w only) During sleep mode: 8 W or less (USB connection) 6 W or less (wireless LAN connection) (LBP6030w only) When the power switch is turned OFF: 0.5 W or less
Consumables	© Consumables
Weight	Machine and accessories • Machine (excluding toner cartridge): Approx. 5.0 kg • Toner cartridge: Approx. 0.5 kg Consumables • Toner cartridge (Canon Cartridge 725): Approx. 0.5 kg

*1 Print speed may be slower depending on the settings for output adjustment mode, paper size and type, paper orientation, and number of copies printed.

 st_2 May vary depending on conditions of use (installation environment, etc.).

 *3 May vary depending on the output environment.

 $^{\ast 4}$ May vary depending on the installation environment and type of paper used.

*5 Indicates that the sound pressure level of each bystander position is below the ISO 7779 absolute criteria for the background noise level.

*6 Even if the machine is turned OFF, a slight amount of power is still consumed while the power plug is plugged into the AC power outlet. To stop power consumption completely, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

Software Specifications

Printing Software	UFR II
Printable Area	OPrintable Range

Wireless LAN Specifications LBP6030w

Standards	IEEE 802.11b/g/n
Transmission Scheme	DS-SS system, OFDM system
Frequency Range	2,412 to 2,472 MHz
Data Transmission Rate	IEEE 802.11b 1/2/5.5/11 Mbps IEEE 802.11g 6/9/12/18/24/36/48/54 Mbps IEEE 802.11n • SGI Invalidated 20 MHz: 6.5/13/19.5/26/39/52/58.5/65 Mbps • SGI Validated 20 MHz: 7.2/14.4/21.7/28.9/43.3/57.8/72.2 Mbps • SGI Invalidated 40 MHz: 13.5/27/40.5/81/108/121.5/135 Mbps • SGI Validated 40 MHz: 13.5/27/40.5/81/108/121.5/135 Mbps
Communication Mode	Infrastructure mode
Security	WEP, WPA-PSK (TKIP/AES-CCMP), WPA2-PSK (TKIP/AES-CCMP)
Connection Method	WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup), Manual setup

Paper

■Supported Paper Sizes

Paper sizes that can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray are listed below.

A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) **B5** (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm) A5 (148.5 mm x 210.0 mm) Legal (215.9 mm x 355.6 mm) Letter (215.9 mm x 279.4 mm) **Executive** (184.2 mm x 266.7 mm) Oficio (216.0 mm x 317.0 mm) Brazil Oficio (216.0 mm x 355.0 mm) Mexico Oficio (216.0 mm x 341.0 mm) Foolscap (216.0 mm x 330.0 mm) **16K** (195.0 mm x 270.0 mm) Envelope Monarch (98.4 mm x 190.5 mm) Envelope No. 10 (COM10) (104.7 mm x 241.3 mm) Envelope DL (110.0 mm x 220.0 mm) Envelope C5 (162.0 mm x 229.0 mm) Custom paper size (Width 76.2 to 216.0 mm x Length 188.0 to 356.0 mm)

Paper Tray Capacity by Paper Type

Chlorine-free paper can be used with this machine.

Paper Type		Capacity (Multi-Purpose Tray)
Diain paper*1	60 to 80 g/m²	Approx. 150 sheets
Plain paper ^{*1}	81 to 89 g/m ²	Approx. 120 sheets
	90 to 105 g/m²	Approx. 100 sheets
Heavy paper	106 to 163 g/m ²	Approx. 60 sheets
Transparency*2 *3		Approx. 100 sheets
Labels *3		Approx. 50 sheets
Envelope		Approx. 10 sheets

*1 Recycled paper can be used.

*2 Use laser printer transparencies.

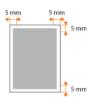
*3 Use A4 or Letter size only.

■ Machine Settings for Paper Types

CLoading Paper

Printable Range

The printable range is indicated in gray. Envelopes require a 10 mm margin on the top, bottom, left, and right.



Consumables

The following is a guide to the estimated replacement time for the consumables used in this machine. Purchase consumables at your local authorized Canon dealer. Observe safety and health precautions when storing and handling consumables (**Consumables**).

NOTE

Depending on the installation environment, printing paper size, or document type, you may need to replace consumables before the end of the estimated lifetime.

Toner Cartridges



Supplied Toner Cartridges

The average yield $\!\!\!^*$ of the toner cartridge that comes with the machine is 700 sheets.

* The average yield is based on "ISO/IEC 19752" (the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for monochromatic electrophotographic printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO [International Organization for Standardization]) when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.

Replacement Toner Cartridges

For optimum print quality, using Canon genuine toner cartridges is recommended.

Canon Genuine Toner Cartridge	Average yield of toner cartridge*
Canon Cartridge 725	1,600 sheets

NOTE

When replacing toner cartridges OHow to Replace Toner Cartridges

LINKS

Replacing Toner Cartridges

Manuals Included with the Machine

The manuals listed below are included with the machine. Refer to them as necessary.

Getting Started		Read this manual first. It contains easy to understand explanations of everything you need to do to set up the machine, from removing the packing materials to configuring the settings. It also explains basic maintenance.
	PDF Getting Started	This manual has descriptions in the following languages. Bulgarian, Croatian, Czech, Estonian, Greek, Hungarian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Persian, Portuguese, Romanian, Slovakian, Slovenian, Ukrainian
e-Manual (This Manual)	emanual	This manual describes all the functions of the machine. It is designed for viewing in a Web browser. You can browse information by category or enter a keyword to search for pages on a specific topic. OUsing the e-Manual
Printer Driver Installation Guide	PrinterDriver	This manual explains how to install the printer drivers included on the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM.

Using the e-Manual

The e-Manual is a manual that can be viewed on your computer. It describes all of the functions of the machine. You can search for information about what you want to do, or enter a keyword to quickly find the page you are looking for. You can use the e-Manual by installing it on your computer, or start the e-Manual directly from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM. **©Installing the e-Manual**

How to Find the Topic You Are Looking For

You can find the page you are looking for using the following three methods.

Search the contents

You can find the page you are looking for by selecting a topic from the [Contents] tab on the left side of the screen, or by selecting a chapter icon from the icons next to the topics.

C Top Page

C Topic Page

Search by keyword

You can search by entering keywords, such as "envelope" or "toner cartridge." Pages containing the keywords are displayed. You can also enter phrases such as "load paper." The search will find topics containing all of the words in the phrase (AND search).

Search Tab

Search the site map

Click [Site Map] on the top part of the screen to display a list of all the e-Manual topics. From there you can find the topic you are looking for.

Site Map

NOTE

System Requirements

To use the e-Manual, one of the following Web browsers is required. The content of the e-Manual may not display correctly if a browser not listed below is used.

Windows: Internet Explorer 8.0/9.0/10.0/11.0, Firefox 24.x ESR/26.0

Mac OS: Safari 7.0, Firefox 24.x ESR/26.0

Installing the e-Manual

Install the e-Manual on your computer by using the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM that comes with the machine.

1 Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.

2 Click [Custom Installation].

Canon	UFRII LT CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup
	Easy Installation
	Installs the standard programs and the manuals.
	Custom Installation
	Installs the programs and manuals that you select.
14.	Start Software Programs
And the first part of the second	Starts programs required for configuring settings, etc.
11	Manuats
	Displays manuals.
A.	
100	Ext

NOTE:

- If the above screen does not appear ODISPLAYING the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen
- If [AutoPlay] is displayed, click [Run MInst.exe].

Clear the [Printer Driver] check box, and click [Install].

e selected programs shown below ou can configure the network setting			structions displayed on the scree	n.
Printer Driver This program is required	for printing using your device.			Readme 80 MB
				00100
e-Manual These are the manuals without using this CD/D/	or your device. If you install the r	manuals on your com	puter, you can display them	11 ME
	-			
	C : Free Disk Space	54151 NR	Space Required to Install	11 10

4 Read the License Agreement and click [Yes] to agree.

License Agreement
Please read the following license agreement completely and carefully before installing the software programs.
[Septembar 1995]. Consistent with 48 C.E.R. 12.212 and 46 C.F.R. 227.720.2 through 227.720.2 4 (June 1995), at U.S. Government End Users shall acquire the Software with only those rights set forth herein. Manufacturer is Canon Inc./20-2, Shimomanuko 3-chome, Onta-ku, Tokyo 146-8501, Japan.
10. SEVERABLITY in the event that any section hereof is declared or found to be flegal by any court or tribunal of competent jurisdiction, such section shall be real and vold with respect to the jurisdiction of that court or tribunal and all the remaining provisions hereof shall remain in thill force and effect.
11. ACKNOWLEDGENENT BY CLICKING THE BUTTON INDIXATING YOUR ACCEPTANCE AS STATED BELOW OR USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ACKNOWLEDGE BATA YOU HAVE READ THA SAGREEMENT, UNDERSTODO IT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY IT'S TERMS AND CONCINIONS. YOU ALSO AGREE THAT THIS ADDREEMENT IS THE COMMENTE AND EXCLUSIVE STATEMENT OF ANDREEMENT SERVEETIN YOU AND CANON CONCERNING THE SUBJECT MATTER HEREOF AND SUPERIES SALL PROPOSALS OR PHORA ARGEMENTS, VERHAL OR WRITTER, AND ANY OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN YOU AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HEREOF. AND ARBEMORENT TO THIS AGREEMENT SAUL BE BYTECTINE WILLESS SIGNED FOR DUCK STORED BERGERSTRATURE OF CANON,
Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Canon for any reason, please write to Canon's sales subsidiary or distributorideale, serving the country where you obtained the Products.
To accept the terms of this agreement, click (Yes), To decline the terms of this agreement, click (Ho), To use this program, the terms of this agreement must be accepted.
Batk Yes No

- 5
- If you want to change the installation destination, click [Browse] and select your desired location.

😪 Manual Installer		×
Select the folder where the manual will be installed.		
Destination Folders		Browne
	Instal	Cancel

The installation begins.



7 Click [Next] ▶ [Exit].



■Viewing the e-Manual

Double-click the shortcut icon of the e-Manual on the desktop.



If a security warning message appears

Click [Allow blocked content].

Internet Explorer restricted this webpage from running scripts or ActiveX controls. Allow blocked content ×

Viewing the e-Manual Directly from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM

1 Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.

- If the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] screen does not appear Displaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup]
 Screen
- If [AutoPlay] is displayed, click [Run MInst.exe].

2 Click [Manuals].

3 Click [e-Manual].

Uninstalling the e-Manual

You can remove the e-Manual from the computer to restore the computer to the same state it was in before the e-Manual was installed.

1 Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.

2 Click [Start Software Programs].

Canon	UFRII LT CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup
and the second second second	Easy Installation
	Installs the standard programs and the manuals. Custom Installation
111	Installs the programs and menuals that you select. Start Software Programs
III	Starts programs required for configuring settings, etc.
- Charles	Displays manuals.
A. M	
	Ext

NOTE:

- If the above screen does not appear ODISPLAYING the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen
- If [AutoPlay] is displayed, click [Run MInst.exe].

3 Click [Start] for [Manual Uninstaller].

Start Software Programs	
tarts programs from the CD/D/D. Click [Start] to the right of the program you want to start.	
NFLEP Network Setup Tool Configures printer settings in order to connect to the network.	Readme Start
Manual Uninstallar The manuals installed by this setup will be uninstalled.	Start
Back	Cancel

4 Click [Next].

Manual Installer	
Uninstal Manuals	
The manuals installed by this setup will be uninstalled.	
(PED. 016.018.004.01.0178)	
Next Cancel	

The uninstall begins.

5 Click [Exit]	•
----------------	---

😪 Manual Installer	-	×
Uninstal Manuals		
Uninstallation of the manuals is complete.		
	_	5
	Evit	J



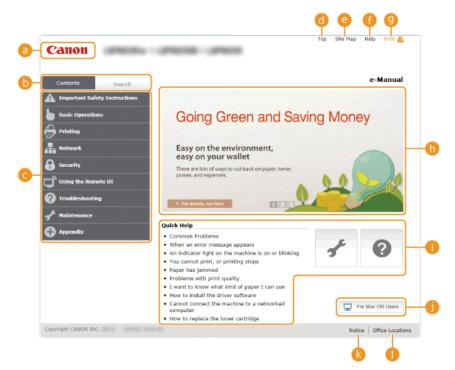


Screen Layout of the e-Manual

The e-Manual is divided into different screens, and the content of each screen varies.

Top Page

This page appears when the e-Manual is started.



👩 Canon

Click to return to the top page from any other page.

[Contents] tab/[Search] tab

Click to toggle the display between the [Contents] tab and [Search] tab.

Contents

Displays the titles of chapters (). Place the mouse pointer over one of the titles to display the topics in that chapter on the right. Click a topic to display its page.

Contents Search		
M Important Safety Instructions		
Basic Operations	Parts and Their Functions	Front Side
A Printing	Printer Status Window	Back Side
<u> </u>	Turning the Power ON and OFF	Interior
Network		Multi-Purpose Tray
8 Security	Saving Power	cut back on paper, toner,
Using the Remote UI	Loading Paper	J _
Using the Remote UT	> For details, see here	
? Troubleshooting		

👩 [Тор]

Click to return to the top page from any other page.

🙆 [Site Map]

Click to display the titles of all e-Manual topics.

🕧 [Help]

Click to display information on how to view the e-Manual, how to perform a search, and other information.

(9 [Print]

Click to print the currently displayed topic page.

🚯 Feature Highlights

This page provides a variety of practical examples of ways to use the machine. Click 1/2/3 to toggle the display of practical examples by category, or click the sliding display for more information about each category. The sliding display can be stopped by moving the pointer onto it. **C**Feature Highlights

[Quick Help]/[Troubleshooting]/[Maintenance]

Click to view how to solve problems or maintain the machine.

[For Mac OS Users]

Click to view precautions when using Mac OS.

() [Notice]

Click to view important information you should know when using the machine.

[Office Locations]

Click to display contact information for any inquiries about the machine.

Feature Highlights

This page provides a variety of practical examples of ways to use the machine.

	Easy on the environment, easy on your wallet	
	There are lots of ways to cut back on paper, toner, power, and expenses.	
01	Print Multiple Pages on a Single Sheet	
02	Sleep Mode	<u>-</u>
w	su can save power by setting the machine to enter sleep mode automatically henceser it has not been used for a while, You don't need to turn OFF the power ch time, but you can still have the machine minimize its power consumption. re auto shutdown function can boot the savings, by automatically turning OFF e machine if it remains side for a longer time. These convenient functions work the background to save power and momer every day.	

0 🔿 🔿

Click to expand the window to show the information. Click again to collapse the window.

60

Click to display the corresponding topic page.

Topic Page

Topic pages contain information about how to configure and use the machine.

	Canon	Top Site Map Help Print 🚨	
	Contents Search Using the Remote UI	Top + Using the Ramote UI + Changing Machine Settings + Setting Menu List]-[]
C-	Expand All Collepon All	Setting Menu List	-0
	Nanaging Documents and Checking the Machine Status Changing Machine Settings Setting Nervi List	[Jereferences] Menu Olisplay Settings OTimer Settings [Adjustment/Maintenance] Menu	
d-	0 0 0 0 0 0	OUtility Menu [System Management Settings] Menu OSystem Management OSecurity Settings ONetwork Settings OInitialize Setting Information	
e -		Display Settings Select the display language used for the Remote UI screens.	-k
0-	Enric SI	Remote 181-	
		Notice Office Locations	

Chapter icons and topic titles are displayed in this tab.

🕒 🔍 🗩

The [Contents] tab can be widened and narrowed.

[Expand All]/[Collapse All]

Click [Expand All] to display all of the subsections of all topics. Click [Collapse All] to close all of the subsections of all the topics.

6 Chapter icons

Click a chapter icon to navigate to the top of the corresponding chapter.

Copics

Displays the topics of the selected chapter. If "+" is displayed on a topic, clicking it displays the subsections of that topic. Click "-" to close an expanded topic.

[Print all]

All pages of the selected chapter are opened in a separate window. You can print them as necessary.

(9) Navigation

This shows which chapter topic you are currently viewing.

(h 🖪

Click to return to the page top.

() < / >

Click to display the previous or next topic.

00

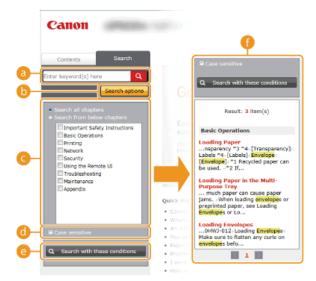
Click to jump to the corresponding page. To return to the previous page, click the "Back" button on your Web browser.

🚷 🖂

Click to display hidden detailed descriptions. Click again to close the detailed descriptions.

Search Tab

This tab contains a text box to perform a search and find the page you are looking for.



[Enter keyword(s) here]

Enter one or more keywords and click **Q** to display the search results in a results list. You can enter a phrase to find pages that contain all of the words in the phrase. To find the exact phrase, enclose it in double quotation marks.

[Search options]

Click to specify search conditions such as the scope of the search and case sensitivity.

Gearch scope selector

You can use this to select the individual chapters to search. This allows you to search more efficiently, when you can predict the chapters containing the topic that you are looking for.

6 Search options selector

Select the check box to make your search case-sensitive.

[Search with these conditions]

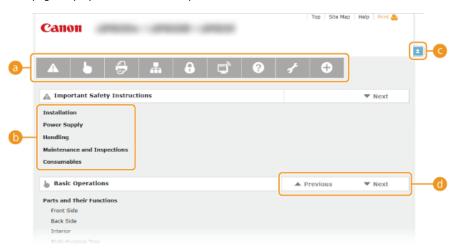
Cand cospecify the conditions. After setting them, press this to perform the search and display the results in the [Result] list.

🗿 Result list

This displays pages that contain the specified keywords. From the results, locate the page you are looking for and click the topic title of the page. If the results cannot be displayed on one page, click [a] / [b] or a page number to display the results on the corresponding page.

Site Map

This page displays the titles of all topics in the e-Manual.



6 Chapter icons

Click to jump to the table of contents of the selected chapter.

() Topic titles

Displays titles and topics. Click a title to jump to the corresponding topic page.

6 🖬

Click to return to the page top.

<u>(</u>]

Click to go to the previous or next chapter.

Viewing the e-Manual

Marks

Cautions regarding safety, restrictions and cautions regarding the handling of the machine, useful tips, and other information are indicated using the marks below.

	Indicates a warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the machine safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
	Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the machine safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
\bigcirc	Indicates an operation that must not be performed. Read these items carefully, and make sure not to perform the described operations.
IMPORTANT	Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the machine correctly and avoid damage to the machine or property.
NOTE	Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure.
TIPS	Indicates useful functions or tips for using the machine.

Keys

Keys on the machine and buttons on the computer display are indicated with the following notations:

Туре	Example notation in the e-Manual
Machine key	🛔 (Paper) key
Buttons and other text interfaces on the computer display	[Preferences]

Computer screens

Unless otherwise noted, displays used in the e-Manual are those for the LBP6030w. Depending on the operating system you are using, the appearance of the displays in this manual may differ slightly from the displays that you see. Also, the appearance of printer drivers and software may differ depending on their version.

Illustrations

- Unless otherwise noted, illustrations used in the e-Manual are those for the LBP6030w.
- Depending on the country or region, the shape of power cord plugs and AC power outlets may differ from those shown in the illustrations of the e-Manual.

Other

This section describes basic Windows operations and includes disclaimers, copyright information, and other information.

Basic Windows Operations

- Displaying [Computer] or [My Computer]
- Displaying the Printer Folder
- CEnabling [Network discovery]
- ODisplaying Shared Printers in the Print Server
- Displaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen
- Printing a Test Page in Windows
- Checking the Bit Architecture
- Checking the Printer Port
- Checking Bidirectional Communication
- Checking the SSID to Which Your Computer Is Connected

Displaying [Computer] or [My Computer]

Windows XP/Server 2003 [Start] > select [My Computer].

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008 [Start] > select [Computer].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [File Explorer] > [Computer] or [This PC].

Displaying the Printer Folder

Windows XP Professional/Server 2003 [Start] > select [Printers and Faxes].

Windows XP Home Edition [Start] ▶ select [Control Panel] ▶ [Printers and Other Hardware] ▶ [Printers and Faxes].

Windows Vista [Start] > select [Control Panel] > [Printer].

Windows 7/Server 2008 R2 [Start] > select [Devices and Printers].

Windows 8/Server 2012 Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Control Panel] > [View devices and printers].

Windows Server 2008

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > double-click [Printers].

Enabling [Network discovery]

If you are using Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, enable [Network discovery] to view the computers on your network.

Windows Vista

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > [View network status and tasks] > under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

Windows 7/Server 2008 R2

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > [View network status and tasks] > [Change advanced sharing settings] > under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Control Panel] > [View network status and tasks] > [Change advanced sharing settings] > under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

Windows Server 2008

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > double-click [Network and Sharing Center] > under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

1 Open [Windows Explorer] or [File Explorer].

Windows XP/Vista/7/Server 2003/Server 2008

[Start] > select [All Programs] or [Programs] > [Accessories] > [Windows Explorer].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [File Explorer].



Select a print server from [Network] or [My Network Places].

To check a computer on the network, you may need to enable [Network discovery] (SEnabling [Network discovery]) or search for the computer on the network.

💮 🕞 - 📴 + Libraries	*	× 49	Search Libraries				р Р
Organiza - New libro	ny			22	•	8	0
🛛 🜟 Favoritas	Libraries Open a library to see your files and	l arrange them by folder,	date, and other pro	perties.			
D Contraction	Documents	A.	Music				
> 🛤 Computer	Library		Library				
a Se Naturati D ∰ PRINTSERVER	Pictures Library		Wideos Library				
4 items							

The shared printers are displayed.

COO - M + Network + PRINTSERVER +	• • • Search PRINTSERVER
Organize Network and Sharing Center View remote printers	¥• 🖬 🛛
P 🖈 Favoritas	SharedDocs Share
) 📜 Libraries	
b 🕞 Computer	
4 👊 Network	
▷ I PRINTSERVER	
2 items	

Displaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen

If your computer does not display the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] screen after you insert the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM, follow the procedure below. This following example uses "D:" as the name of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM drive. The CD-ROM/DVD-ROM drive name may be different on your computer.

Windows XP/Server 2003

[Start] > select [Run] > enter "D:\MInst.exe" > click [OK].

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008

[Start] • enter "D:\MInst.exe" in [Search programs and files] or [Start Search] • press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Run] > enter "D:\MInst.exe" > click [OK].

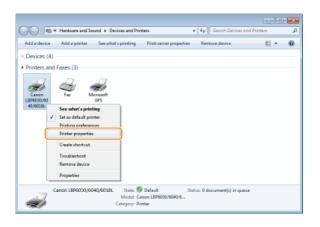
Printing a Test Page in Windows

You can check whether the printer driver is operational by printing a test page in Windows.

Load A4 size paper in the multi-purpose tray. OLoading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Display the printer folder. ODisplaying the Printer Folder

3 Right-click the icon of the machine and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].



4 In the [General] tab, click [Print Test Page].

Canon LBP6	030/6040/6018L Prop	eties 💌
General has	ng Pots Advancer	d Color Management Security Device Settings Profile
-	Canon LBP0030/0	240/00081
Locations		
Comment		
Model	Canon LBP6030/60	940/6018L
Features Color: No		
Double-si		Paper available:
Staple: No		A4 ^
Speed: 18		
Maximum	resolution: 600 dpi	*
		Profesences
		OK Cancel Apply Help

Windows prints the test page.

Checking the Bit Architecture

If you are not sure whether your computer is running 32-bit or 64-bit Windows, follow the procedure below to check.

Display [Control Panel].

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008 [Start] > select [Control Panel].

Windows 8/Server 2012 Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Control Panel].

2 Display [System].

Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012 Click [System and Security] or [System and Maintenance] > [System].

Windows Server 2008 Double-click [System].

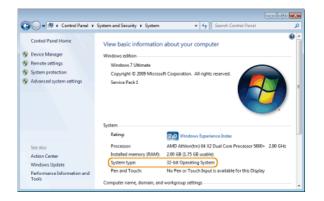
3 Check the bit architecture.

32-bit operating systems

[32-bit Operating System] is displayed.

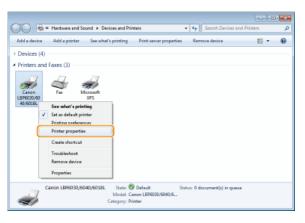
64-bit operating systems

[64-bit Operating System] is displayed.

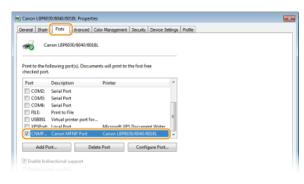


Checking the Printer Port

- **1** Display the printer folder. ODisplaying the Printer Folder
- 2 Right-click the icon of the machine and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].



3 In the [Ports] tab, check that the port is selected correctly.

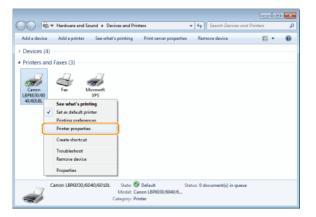


NOTE

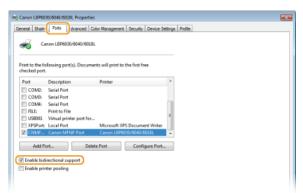
If you are using a network connection and have changed the machine's IP address (LBP6030w)

If the [Description] of the selected port is [Canon MFNP Port], and the machine and the computer are on the same subnet, then the connection will be maintained. You do not need to add a new port. If it is [Standard TCP/IP Port], you need to add a new port. **Configuring Printer Ports**

- **1** Display the printer folder. ODisplaying the Printer Folder
- 2 Right-click the icon of the machine and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].



3 In the [Ports] tab, check that the [Enable bidirectional support] check box is selected.



Checking the SSID to Which Your Computer Is Connected

If your computer is connected to a wireless LAN network, click and , click and in the system tray to display the SSID of the connected wireless LAN router.



For Mac OS Users

Your machine may have not come with a driver for Mac OS depending on when you purchased the machine. The drivers are uploaded to the Canon website when they become needed. Check the operating system of your computer and download the appropriate driver from the Canon website. For the driver installation procedure and how to operate the driver, see the "Printer Driver Guide for Macintosh."

In the e-Manual and Printer Driver Installation Guide, methods to operate in the Windows environment are explained as examples. To view how to use the driver and utility for Mac OS, see the following guide or help.

Object	Reference
Installing the driver	Printer Driver Guide for Macintosh
How to use the driver functions	Driver Help

Displaying the Driver Guide

Double-click the following HTML file in the [SFP] folder on the supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM.

Printer Driver Guide for Macintosh

[SFP] - [Documents] - [XXXXXX]* - [GUIDE] - [index.html]

* For [XXXXXX], select your desired language.

Displaying the Driver Help

Click [🕐] on the driver.

Notice

Third Party Services and Software

Third Party Software (PDF)

You need Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat Reader to view files in the PDF format. If Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat Reader is not installed on your system, download the reader from the Adobe System's web site and install it.

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name(s) in parentheses () may be registered instead.

LBP6030w / LBP6030B / LBP6030 (F166400)

EMC requirements of EC Directive

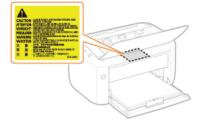
This equipment conforms with the essential EMC requirements of EC Directive. We declare that this product conforms with the EMC requirements of EC Directive at nominal mains input 230 V, 50 Hz although the rated input of the product is 220 to 240 V, 50/60 Hz. Use of shielded cable is necessary to comply with the technical EMC requirements of EC Directive.

Laser Safety

This product is certified as a Class 1 laser product under IEC60825-1:2007 and EN60825-1:2007. This means that the product does not produce hazardous laser radiation.

Since radiation emitted inside the product is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the machine during any phase of user operation. Do not remove protective housings or external covers, except as directed by the equipment's manuals.

The label shown below is attached to the laser scanner unit inside the machine.



CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT LASER KLASSE 1 APPAREIL À LASER DE CLASSE 1 APPARECCHIO LASER DI CLASSE 1 PRODUCTO LÁSER DE CLASE 1 APARELHO A LASER DE CLASSE 1 LUOKAN 1 LASER-TUOTE LASERPRODUKT KLASS 1

A CAUTION

Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

International ENERGY STAR Program



As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR Program for energy efficiency.

The International ENERGY STAR Office Equipment Program is an international program that promotes energy saving through the use of computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products with functions that effectively reduce energy consumption. It is an open system in which business proprietors can participate voluntarily.

The targeted products are office equipment, such as computers, displays, printers, facsimiles, and copiers. The standards and logos are uniform among participating nations.

WEEE Directive



Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU) and national legislation. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit www.canon-europe.com/weee.

■IPv6 Ready Logo



The protocol stack included in this machine has obtained the IPv6 Ready Logo Phase-1 established by the IPv6 Forum.

Product Information required by COMMISSION REGULATION (EU) No 801/2013 amending Regulation (EC) No 1275/2008

Power consumption of the product in networked standby if wired network ports are connected and all wireless network ports are activated (if they are available at the same time).

Model Name	Power consumption of the product in networked standby
LBP6030w	1.6 W

NOTE

The above value(s) are the actual values for single machine, chosen arbitrarily, and may therefore vary from the value of the machine in use. Optional network ports are not connected and/or activated in the measurement.

Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

Using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce certain documents, and the use of such images as scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced by your product, may be prohibited by law and may result in criminal and/or civil liability. A non-exhaustive list of these documents is set forth below. This list is intended to be a guide only. If you are uncertain about the legality of using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce any particular document, and/or of the use of the images scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced, you should consult in advance with your legal advisor for guidance.

- Paper Money
- Travelers Checks
- Money Orders
- Food Stamps
- Certificates of Deposit
- Passports

- Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Immigration Papers
- Identifying Badges or Insignias
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Selective Service or Draft Papers
- Bonds or Other Certificates of Indebtedness
- Checks or Drafts Issued by Governmental Agencies
- Stock Certificates
- Motor Vehicle Licenses and Certificates of Title
- Copyrighted Works/Works of Art without Permission of Copyright Owner

■ Wireless LAN Regulatory Information LBP6030w

Regulatory information

Users in the European Union and other European countries

LBP6030w includes Wireless LAN Module (Model name: AW-NM383).

This device complies with the essential requirements of the R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC.

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity (Wireless LAN Module)

CE

Česky [Czech]	Společnost CANON INC. tímto prohlašuje, že zařízení AW-NM383 je v souladu se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.		
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede CANON INC. erklærer herved, at AW-NM383 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.		
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt CANON INC., dass sich das Gerät AW-NM383 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.		
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab CANON INC. seadme AW-NM383 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ olulistele nõuetele ja muudele asjakohastele sätetele.		
English	Hereby, CANON INC., declares that AW-NM383 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.		
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente CANON INC. declara que el AW-NM383 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.		
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρούσα, η CANON INC., δηλώνει ότι το μοντέλο AW-NM383 συμμορφώνεται προς τις ουσιώδεις απαιτήσεις και τις λοιπές σχετικές διατάξεις της Οδηγίας 1999/5/ΕΚ.		
Français [French]	Par la présente, CANON INC. déclare que l'appareil AW-NM383 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.		
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente CANON INC. dichiara che AW-NM383 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.		
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo CANON INC. deklarē, ka AW-NM383 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.		
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo bendrovė "CANON INC." deklaruoja, kad AW-NM383 atitinka pagrindinius Direktyvoje 1999/5/EB išdėstytus reikalavimus ir kitas josnuostatas.		
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart CANON INC. dat AW-NM383 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.		
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, CANON INC., jiddikjara li I-AW-NM383 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma' dispożizzjonijiet relevanti oħra tad-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.		
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott CANON INC. nyilatkozom, hogy a AW-NM383 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.		
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym CANON INC. oświadcza, że model AW-NM383 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałym stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.		
Português [Portuguese]	Por este documento, a CANON INC. declara que o AW-NM383 está em conformidade com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições relevantes da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.		
Slovenščina [Slovenian]	Družba CANON INC. izjavlja, da je tiskalnik AW-NM383 skladni z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.		
Slovensky [Slovak]	CANON INC. týmto vyhlasuje, že AW-NM383 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.		

Suomi [Finnish]	CANON INC. vakuuttaa täten, että AW-NM383 -laite on direktiivin 1999/5/ EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.	
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar CANON INC. att denna AW-NM383 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.	
Română [Romanian]	n prezenta, CANON INC., declară faptul că aparatul AW-NM383 este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și cu e prevederi relevante incluse în Directiva 1999/5/CE.	
Български език [Bulgarian]	С настоящето CANON INC. декларира, че AW-NM383 отговаря на съществените изисквания и другите приложими изисквания на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.	
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir CANON INC. því yfir að AW-NM383 sé í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.	
Norsk [Norwegian]	CANON INC. erklærer herved at utstyret AW-NM383 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.	
Gaeilge [Irish]	Dearbhaíonn CANON INC. leis seo go gcloíonn AW-NM383 le ceanglais riachtanacha agus le forálacha ábhartha eile na Treorach 1999/5/CE.	

v	* Toto zařízení může být provozováno na území AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU,			
Česky [Czech]	IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Dansk [Danish]	* Dette produkt må anvendes i AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Deutsch [German]	* Dieses Gerät darf in folgenden Ländern betrieben werden AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Eesti [Estonian]	* Seda seadet võib kasutada AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
English	* This equipment may be operated in AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Español [Spanish]	* Este equipo puede ser utilizado en AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Français [French]	* Cet équipement peut être utilisable en AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Italiano [Italian]	* Questo dispositivo può essere utilizzato in AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Latviski [Latvian]	* Šo aprīkojumu drīkst lietot AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	 * Šį įrenginį galima eksploatuoti AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK. 			
Nederlands [Dutch]	* Deze apparatuur kan worden gebruikt in de volgende landen AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Suomi [Finnish]	* Laitetta voidaan käyttää seuraavassa maassa AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Malti [Maltese]	* Dan I-apparat jista' jintuza f' AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Magyar [Hungarian]	* Ez a készülék AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK üzemeltethető.			
Polski [Polish]	* To urządzenie może być eksploatowane w AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Português [Portuguese]	* Este equipamento pode ser utilizado em AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Slovenščina [Slovenian]	* To opremo je dovoljeno uporabljati v AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Slovensky [Slovak]	 * Toto zariadenie môže byť používané na území AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK. * Upozornenie k používaniu tohto výrobku.Francúzsko: Tento výrobok sa nesmie používať vonku. 			
Ελληνική [Greek]	* Το παρόν προϊόν μπορεί να χρησιμοποιηθεί στην ΑΤ, ΒΕ, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Svenska [Swedish]	* Den här utrustningen kanske fungerar i AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			
Română [Romanian]	* Acest echipament poate fi operat in AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.			

Български език [Bulgarian]	* Това оборудване може да се използва в АТ, ВЕ, ВG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	 * Viðgerð á þessu tæki má annast á AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.
Norsk [Norwegian]	* Dette produktet må anvendes i AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.
Gaeilge [Irish]	* Féadfar an trealamh seo a fheidhmiú in AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LI, LT, LU, LV, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK.

Regulatory information for users in Jordan

LBP6030w includes approved Wireless LAN Module (Model name: AW-NM383).

Contains Wireless LAN Module approved by TRC/SS/2014/38

Regulatory information for users in UAE

LBP6030w includes approved Wireless LAN Module (Model name: AW-NM383).

TRA REGISTERED No: ER0126617/14 DEALER No: DA0060877/11

Disclaimers

- The information in this document is subject to change without notice.
- CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

Copyright

Copyright CANON INC. 2014

No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.

Trademarks

- Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, Mac, Mac OS, Safari, and Bonjour are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- All other product and brand names are registered trademarks, trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.

Office Locations

CANON INC.

30-2, Shimomaruko 3-chome, Ohta-ku, Tokyo 146-8501, Japan

CANON MARKETING JAPAN INC.

16-6, Konan 2-chome, Minato-ku, Tokyo 108-8011, Japan

CANON U.S.A., INC.

One Canon Park, Melville, NY 11747, U.S.A.

CANON EUROPA N.V.

Bovenkerkerweg 59, 1185 XB Amstelveen, The Netherlands

CANON CHINA CO. LTD.

15F Jinbao Building No.89, Jinbao Street, Dongcheng District, Beijing 100005, PRC

CANON SINGAPORE PTE LTD

1 HarbourFront Avenue, #04-01 Keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632

CANON AUSTRALIA PTY LTD

1 Thomas Holt Drive, North Ryde, Sydney NSW 2113, Australia

CANON GLOBAL WORLDWIDE SITES

http://www.canon.com/



LBP6030w / LBP6030B / LBP6030 Printer Driver Installation Guide

System Requirements4Installing5Installing from the Supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM6Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website13Installing to Use WSD17Setting Up a Print Server22Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer23Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)26Updating and Uninstalling27Updating30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting via Uyreless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51Notice53	Introduction	3
Installing5Installing from the Supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM6Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website13Installing to Use WSD17Setting Up a Print Server22Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer23Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)26Updating and Uninstalling27Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	System Requirements	4
Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website13Installing to Use WSD17Setting Up a Print Server22Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer23Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)26Updating and Uninstalling27Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Installing	5
Installing to Use WSD17Setting Up a Print Server22Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer23Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)26Updating and Uninstalling27Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Installing from the Supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM	6
Setting Up a Print Server22Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer23Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)26Updating and Uninstalling27Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website	13
Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer23Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)26Updating and Uninstalling27Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Installing to Use WSD	17
Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings) 26Updating and Uninstalling27Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Setting Up a Print Server	22
Updating and Uninstalling27Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer	23
Updating28Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)	26 (
Uninstalling30Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Updating and Uninstalling	27
Troubleshooting33Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	<u>Updating</u>	28
Deleting the USB Class Driver36Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Uninstalling	30
Appendix38Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Troubleshooting	33
Connecting the Printer to a Computer39Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Deleting the USB Class Driver	36
Connecting via Wireless LAN40Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Appendix	38
Connecting via USB42MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Connecting the Printer to a Computer	39
MF/LBP Network Setup Tool43Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Connecting via Wireless LAN	40
Using the Installation Guide45Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Connecting via USB	42
Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide46Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	MF/LBP Network Setup Tool	43
Viewing the Installation Guide49Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Using the Installation Guide	45
Other50Basic Windows Operations51	Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide	46
Basic Windows Operations 51	Viewing the Installation Guide	49
	<u>Other</u>	50
Notice 53	Basic Windows Operations	51
	Notice	53

Introduction

This Installation Guide mainly explains how to install a printer driver and how to set up a print server.

NOTE

System requirements for installation of printer drivers **OSystem Requirements**

Installing

This section explains how to install a printer driver and how to set up the printer so that it is ready to print. OInstalling



■Setting Up a Print Server

This section explains how to set up a print server on the network, and how to install printer drivers on client computers via the print server. Setting Up a Print Server



Updating and Uninstalling

This section explains how to update and uninstall printer drivers. **OUpdating and Uninstalling**





Troubleshooting

This section explains how to resolve problems that may occur during printer driver installation. OTroubleshooting



Appendix

This section explains how to connect the printer to a computer, and how to start the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool manually. It also explains how to use the Installation Guide and provides other useful information. **OAppendix**



System Requirements

The following system environment is required to install printer drivers.

OS	 Windows XP Windows Vista Windows 7 Windows 8 Windows 8.1 Windows Server 2003 Windows Server 2008 Windows Server 2008 R2 (64-bit version only) Windows Server 2012 (64-bit version only) Windows Server 2012 R2 (64-bit version only)
Computer	A computer running one of the above operating systems

NOTE

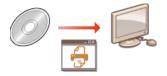
For information about support for the latest operating systems and service packs, visit the Canon website (http://www.canon.com/).

Installing

This section explains how to install a printer driver on your computer and how to set up the printer so that it is ready to print. The printer driver is software that you need to use the printer. Read this section and install the printer driver correctly.

■Installing from the Supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM

Install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM that is supplied with the printer. Perform the setup procedure, from connecting the printer and your computer to installation of the printer driver. **OINSTALLING from the Supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM**



■Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website

The latest printer driver versions are available for downloading from the Canon website. Download a printer driver if, for example, the drivers on the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM do not support the operating system of your computer. **Distalling after Downloading from the Canon Website**



NOTE

Adding a WSD Network Printer

If you are using Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, you can use WSD (Web Services on Devices) to add a network printer. **©Installing to Use WSD**

Installing from the Supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM

The order of operations in an Easy Installation is "Configure network settings" > "Install the printer driver" > "Install the e-Manual." If you are connecting the printer and a computer via wireless LAN, read **OThings to Check before Starting** before starting.



- The printer may not be recognized if you install the printer driver with the printer turned ON. Always turn OFF the power before installing.
- 2 Log on to the computer with an administrator account.
- **3** Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.
- **4** Click [Easy Installation].

Canon	UFRII LT CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup
	Easy Installation
	Custom Installation
111	Start Software Programs
11	Manuals Disdevs manuals
All a start	
2 CM	Ext

NOTE:

- If you do not want to install the e-Manual on your computer, click [Custom Installation].
- If the above screen does not appear Displaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen
- If [AutoPlay] is displayed, click [Run MInst.exe].

S	Printer Driver This program is required for printing using your device.	Readma 80 MB
2	e-Harual These are the manuals for your device. If you install the manuals on your computer, you can display them without using this CODVD.	11 M

NOTE:

If you clicked [Custom Installation] in step 4 Clear the [e-Manual] check box, and click [Install].



6 Read the License Agreement and click [Yes] to agree.

License Agreement
Please read the following license agreement completely and carefully before installing the software programs.
[September 1995]. Consistent with 48 CF.R. 12:712 and 48 CF.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4 (June 1995), at U.S. Government End Users shall acquire the Software with only those rights set forth herein. Manufacturer is Canon Inc./30-2, Shirmonarulo 3-chome, Otta Juli, 1969; 164-8501, Japan.
10. SEVERABLETY Is the event that are section hereof is declared or found to be likepal by any court or britnani of competent jurisdiction, such section shall be run and void with respect to the jurisdiction of that court or tribunal and all the remaining provisions hereof shall remain in this free and effect.
11. ACKNOWLEDGENENT BY CLICKWA THE BUTTON INDICATING YOUR ACCEPTANCE AS STATED BELOW OR USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU AWE READ THIS AGREEMENT, UNDERSTOOD IT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ITS TERMIS AND CONDITIONS. YOU ALSO AGREE THAT THIS AGREEMENT IS THE COMPLETE AND EXCLUSUS STATEMENT OF AGREEMENT BETWEENY OU AND CANON CONCERNING THE SUBJECT ANTERHERGE AND SUPERSEES SALL PROPOSALS OR PRIOR AMERGEMENT, SEABLE OR WRITTEL, AND ANY OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEENY OU AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE, AND DAY MINITEL, AND ANY OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEENY OU AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE, OR OWNER MINITEL, AND ANY OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEENY OU AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEENY OF ADD CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEENY OF AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEENY OF COMPLICATIONS AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEEN TO AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEEN TO ADDUC ANTON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT COMPLICATIONS BETWEEN TO ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEEN TO ADDUC ANTON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER HERGE OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEENT OF COMPLICATIONS BETWEENT AND ADDUC ANTON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS BETWEENT ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS BETWEENT ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS BETWEENT ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS BETWEENT ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND COMPLICATIONS ADDUC AND RELATING TO ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT AND RELATING TO COMPLICATIONS ADDUC AND RELATING TO THE SUBJECT ADDUC AND RELATING TO REPROSED ADDUC AND RELATING TO ADDUC AND RELATING TO COMPLICATIONS ADDUC AND RELATING TO REPROSE A
Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Canon for any reason, please write to Canon's sales subsidiary or distributionideales, serving the country where you obtained the Products.
To accept the terms of this agreement, click [Ves]. To decline the terms of this agreement, click [Ves]. To use this program, the terms of this agreement must be accepted.
Back Yes No

7 Configure the network settings.

Canon MF/LBP Network Setup Tool	
Select the type of connection between the printer and your computer.	
	O Wird LAN Connection
	Wireless LAN Connection
	O USB Cannection
Useful Tips Ohange Settings	Next >

Wireless LAN Connection

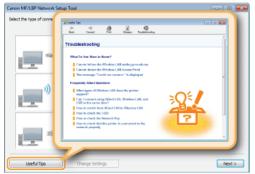
1 Select [Wireless LAN Connection], and click [Next].

2 Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the network settings.

NOTE:

If there is something you do not understand

Click [Useful Tips] at the bottom left of the screen to display troubleshooting tips.



USB Connection

- **1** Select [USB Connection], and click [Next].
- 2 Click [Next].

8 Install the printer driver.

Wireless LAN Connection

1 Select [Standard], select the [Reactivate Printers in the Sleep Mode and Search] check box, and click [Next].

■ If you are using the printer in an IPv6 environment, click [Detailed Settings] > select [Standard TCP/IP Port] > click [OK].



NOTE: About [Detailed Settings] You can select the port type.

Detailed Settings	
Select a pot.	
Pot Type	
Standard TCP/IP Pot	
<u></u>	
	OK Cancel

[MFNP Port] (only for IPv4 environment)

This is a port that enables automatic detection of the printer's IP address. Even if the IP address of the printer is changed, the connection between the printer and computer will be maintained, provided that they belong to the same subnet. Therefore, you do not need to add a new port every time the IP address is changed. If you are using the printer in an IPv4 environment, choose this setting.

[Standard TCP/IP Port]

This is a standard Windows port. Whenever the IP address of the printer is changed, a new port must be added.

2 Select check box for the printer that you want to install from the [Printer List].

If you want to use the printer in an IPv6 environment, click the [IPv6 Devices] tab.

lect Printers to Inst ielect the printers t		ick [Next].	
Pv4Devices			Manual Search by IP Address
Printer List: Device Name	Product Name	IP Address	MAC Address
[] LIP	1.02	192.168.0.215	240A6420AE73

NOTE:

If the [Select Process] screen is displayed

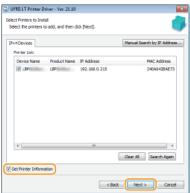
If a printer driver is already installed, the [Select Process] screen is displayed before the [Select Printers to Install] screen. For your printer, the selection made here makes no difference for the setup process. Simply click [Next].

💝 UFRI LT Printer Driver - Ver. 21.10	
Select Process Select the items to install and the process to install the printer driver.	- 6
UPRII LT Printer Driver	
Process to Install Printer Driver	
Add New Printers and Update Existing Printer Drivers	
Add New Printers	
< Back Hiest >	Cancel

If the [IPv6 Devices] tab is not displayed Return to the previous screen, and click [Detailed Settings] > select [Standard TCP/IP Port].

If the printer that you want does not appear in [Printer List] Problems with the Wireless LAN Connection

3 Select the [Set Printer Information] check box, and click [Next].



4 Set the printer information as necessary, and click [Next].

UFRI LT Printer Driver - Ver. 21.10 Printer Information	
Set the port to be used for the selecte Also, you can specify a name for the p	sd printer.
Selected Printer: Use Driver: Port:	Cenon UPP Cenon UPRII LT Driver Ver. 21.10 CHMMP240A6428AE73 * Add Port
Printer Name: Set as Default Use as Shared Printer	Canon LIP
Shared Name:	Onivers to Add Current Printers 1 Number of Printers to Sets 1
	<baok next=""> Cancel</baok>

[Printer Name]

Change the printer name as necessary.

[Set as Default]

Select the check box if you want to use your printer as your default printer.

[Use as Shared Printer]

Select the check box if you want to share the printer (using the computer where you are performing the installation as a print server). **Setting Up a Print Server during Printer Driver Installation**

5 Check the printer information in [Printer List for Driver Installation], and click [Start].

	with the following settings.	
 Installation cannot be canceled once s 	tarted.	
rinter List for Driver Installation:		
= Add = Printer: Canon LBP (Set	t as default)	
Driver : Canon LBP		
Port : CNMPNP_240A6428AE73		
lick (Start) to install.		

where Installation of the printer driver starts.



1 Select [USB Connection], and click [Next].



2 Click [Yes].



3 When the following screen appears, connect the computer and the printer with a USB cable (OConnecting via USB), and turn ON the printer.

USB Connection	
	Follow the steps below to install the printer driver:
	Statusi
1	 Connect the USB cable to the computer. Connect the USB cable to the printer. If the printer power is off, turn on the
2 🤙 🚔	printer. The printer will be recognized automatically and installation of printer drivers vill start.
	If the printer is not automatically recognized even with the USB cable connected, disconnect the cable from the printer offer turning off the
3	printer, and then connect the cable again.
O	

Installation of the printer driver starts.

NOTE:

If installation does not start **OProblems with the USB Connection**

9 Install the e-Manual.

If you selected [Custom Installation], proceed to step 10.

1 Click [Install].

If you want to change the install destination, click [Browse] and select it.

🖓 Manual Installer		
Select the folder where the manual will be installed.		
Destination Folder:		
C: Program Files		Browse
	Instal	Cancel
	1013	Cances

Installation of the e-Manual starts.

2 Click	[Exit].
---------	---------

😪 Manual Installer		X
Install Manuals Installation of the manuals is complete.		
	Evit	
	Cit	

vit the development and monitoring of products that better need outsomer needs, Canon requests that the inform sites invalidated to see Canon products, but apent via the Informer to Canon (or, in the case that you are using a Can oduct in Clina, to the legally approved research company).	
. Information related to Canon laser printer/fax Interary 10 mumber, establistic data and time, somer use information, number of electis printed, and anternance information products a shared for use, calective information recorded in the shared product will be sent. In this survey, we will be stored and other sharedays, reducing up personal information. For the research form	1
I's and therefore unable to reagond to requests to disclose any sent information. After you install the survey program, the above information will be sent to Canon (in case of using your Canon readch in chinas, but legically approved insearch company) through the Internet every month for ten years. Th internet connection fee shall be borne by you.	ļ
accept the terms above, select [Accept], and then dok [Next] to start installation of this program. Accept Contact Accept De Net Accept	

If you select [Accept], the Product Extended Survey Program is installed.

The Product Extended Survey Program is a program to send basic information related to installation and usage of the printer to Canon every month for 10 years. It does not send any other information, including your personal information. You can uninstall the Product Extended Survey Program at any time. Our product Extended Survey Program

11 Click [Next].

Install
Gäck (Newl) to evit setup.
Applied This program is required for printing using your device.
Palanual These are the manuals for your device. If you install the manuals on your computer, you can display them without using this CoCO.
Red

12 Select the [Restart Computer Now (Recommended)] check box, and click [Restart].



Checking the Results of the Installation

If the printer driver has been installed correctly, an icon for the installed printer will be displayed in the printer folder (**Displaying the Printer Folder**).

() + Hardware and Sound + Devices and Printers		Search Devices and Printers	2
Add a device Add a printer	• •7	Search Devices and Printers	-
> Devices (4)			-
Printers and Faxes (3)			
Carrien LBP Witter Witter			
7 kerns			

If the e-Manual has been installed correctly, a shortcut icon for the e-Manual will be displayed on the desktop.

 $^{\ast}\,$ However, the icon is not displayed if you selected [Custom Installation].



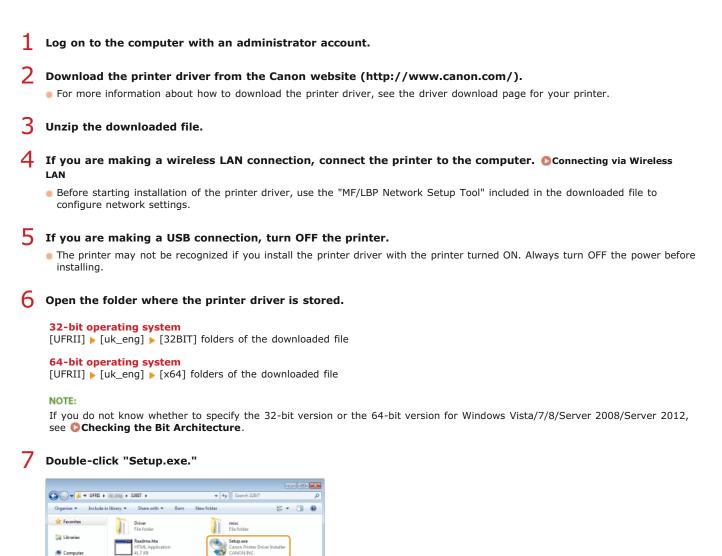
NOTE

If the icon is not displayed

Uninstall the printer driver (**OUninstalling Printer Drivers**) and repeat the setup from the beginning.

Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website

Install the printer driver after downloading the latest version from the Canon website.



8 Read the License Agreement and click [Yes] to agree.

Ucense Agreement	
Please read the following license agreement completely and carefully. Click [Yes] to agree to the license agreement.	
IN CLICENT THE UNITION INDUCTING WORK ACCUPANCE AS STATUS ULUM: INSTALLINE THE SOFTWARK, YOU ACCUMENTISSIST THAT YOU AND READ THAT ACRITICATING, UNDERSTOOD T, AND AGRET TO REDOND BY THE TRENS AND CONDITIONS, YOU AND AGRET THAT THIS AGRETISTIC THE THE CONFERT FAN DOUDLINGS STATUSHING OF AGRETISTIC THIS AGRETISTIC THE THE CONFERT FAN DOUDLINGS STATUSHING OF AGRETISTIC THEY AND AND CARDIN CONCERNING SAULT MATTER HERIC AND SUPERICEDS ALL REDORDS AND RECOMMENTATION AGRETISTICS, YOU AND CAN AND AND THE CONFERT FAN DIS MEDICINATISTIC TO THE SUBJECT FAITTHE REGISTIC ADDITIONS OF THY YOU AND CARDING THAT THE AGRETISTIC THE CONFERT FAN DIS MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER, AND ANY OTHER CONFIRME AND AND AND AND MERICIPANTS, VIRIAL OR WITTER AND	THE
Should you have any questions cancerning this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Ca for any reason, please write to Canon's sales subsidiary or distributor/dealer, serving the country where you obtained the Products.	
for any reason, please write to Canon's sales subsidiary or distributor/dealer, serving the	

9 Install the printer driver.

```
■ Wireless LAN Connection
```

- Select [Standard], select the [Reactivate Printers in the Sleep Mode and Search] check box, and click [Next].
 - If you are using the printer in an IPv6 environment, click [Detailed Settings] > select [Standard TCP/IP Port] > click [OK].



NOTE:

About [Detailed Settings] You can select the port type.

Detailed Settings		
Select a pot.		
Post Type MENP Port		
Standard TCP/IP Pot		
	OK	Cancel

[MFNP Port] (only for IPv4 environment)

This is a port that enables automatic detection of the printer's IP address. Even if the IP address of the printer is changed, the connection between the printer and computer will be maintained, provided that they belong to the same subnet. Therefore, you do not need to add a new port every time the IP address is changed. If you are using the printer in an IPv4 environment, choose this setting.

[Standard TCP/IP Port]

This is a standard Windows port. Whenever the IP address of the printer is changed, a new port must be added.

2 Select check box for the printer that you want to install from the [Printer List].

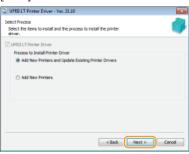
If you want to use the printer in an IPv6 environment, click the [IPv6 Devices] tab.

elect Printers to Inst			
Select the printers t	to add, and then di	ok [Next].	
IPv4 Devices			Manual Search by IP Address
Printer List:			
Device Name	Product Name	IP Address	MAC Address
LIP	LIP	192, 168, 0, 215	240A642BAE73

NOTE:

If the [Select Process] screen is displayed

If a printer driver is already installed, the [Select Process] screen is displayed before the [Select Printers to Install] screen. For your printer, the selection made here makes no difference for the setup process. Simply click [Next].



If the [IPv6 Devices] tab is not displayed Return to the previous screen, and click [Detailed Settings] > select [Standard TCP/IP Port].

If the printer that you want does not appear in [Printer List] Problems with the Wireless LAN Connection

3 Select the [Set Printer Information] check box, and click [Next].

4Devices			Manual Search by IP Address
rinter List:			
Device Name	Product Name	IP Address	MAC Address
V UP		192-168-0-215	24066420.4673
4			

4 Set the printer information as necessary, and click [Next].

💱 UFRI LT Printer Driver - Ve	e. 21.10
Printer Information Set the port to be used for th Also, you can specify a name	
Selected Printer:	Canon LBP
Use Driver:	Canon UFRIILT Driver Ver. 21.10
Ports	CNMPNP_240A6428AE73 *
	Add Port
Printer Name:	Canon LIP
Set as Default	
Use as Shared Printer	
Shared Name:	
	Drivers to Add
	Current Printer: 1
	Number of Printers to Setu
	< Back Next > Cancel

[Printer Name]

Change the printer name as necessary.

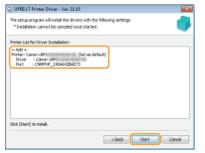
[Set as Default]

Select the check box if you want to use your printer as your default printer.

[Use as Shared Printer]

Select the check box if you want to share the printer (using the computer where you are performing the installation as a print server). **Osetting Up a Print Server during Printer Driver Installation**

5 Check the printer information in [Printer List for Driver Installation], and click [Start].



Installation of the printer driver starts.

USB Connection

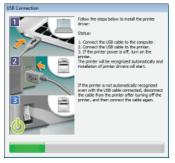
1 Select [USB Connection], and click [Next].



2 Click [Yes].

Warning		22
4	Installation cannot be stopped once started. Do you want to continue?	
	Yes No	

3 When the following screen appears, connect the computer and the printer with a USB cable (©Connecting via USB), and turn ON the printer.



Installation of the printer driver starts.

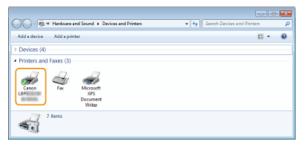
NOTE: If installation does not start **OProblems with the USB Connection**

10 Select the [Restart My Computer Now] check box, and click [Restart].



Checking the Results of the Installation

If the printer driver has been installed correctly, an icon for the installed printer will be displayed in the printer folder (**Displaying the Printer Folder**).



NOTE

If the icon is not displayed

Uninstall the printer driver (**Ouninstalling Printer Drivers**) and repeat the installation from the beginning.

Installing to Use WSD

If you are using Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, you can print by using the WSD (Web Services on Devices) protocol. If you want to use WSD, first install the printer driver and then add a network printer.

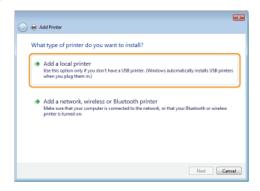
Installing a Printer DriverAdding a Network Printer

Installing a Printer Driver

- Log on to the computer with an administrator account.
- 2 Open the printer folder. ODisplaying the Printer Folder
- **3** Click [Add a printer] or [Add Printer].

COC	Search Devices and Printers 👂
Add a device Add a printer	8 · 0
> Devices (4)	
Printers and Faxes (2) Fax Fax Fax Fax Fax Verson	
6 Rams	

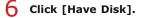
4 Click [Add a local printer].





Check that [LPT1] is selected under [Use an existing port], and click [Next].

Choose a printer port		
A printer port is a type of cor	nection that allows your computer to ex	change information with a printe
Use an existing port:	LPT1: (Printer Port)	
Create a new port:		
Type of ports	Local Port	



Install the printer driver Chose your printer from the list. CLck Windows Update to see more models. To instal the driver from an installation CD, clck Have Disk. Manufacturer Brother Concen Brother Brother Brother Concen Brother Br	0	🔒 🖶 Add Printer		×
Brother Conon Epsen Fyl Xerox This driver is digitally signed. Windows Diplate Have Disk.		Choose your printer from the list. Click Windows Update to see more mo	dels.	
Tell me why driver signing is importent		Brother CP.115C Coson G Bother DCP.115C Gason G Bother DCP.117C Full Recox G Bother DCP.125C Full Recox G Bother DCP.125C		

7 Click [Browse].

Install Fro	m Disk	
J	Inset the manufacturer's installation disk, and then make sure that the correct drive is selected below.	OK Cancel
	Copy menufacturer's files from:	• Browse

8 Specify the folder where the printer driver is stored, select the Inf file, and click [Open].

Lackin: Down - O I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	Locate File					-81
Recett Places	Look in:	👗 Driver		- 🗿 🌶 🗈	9 📃 •	
Larries	Recent Places	a Nf	D			
Libraries						
182						
Computer	Computer					
Network File none: UNF File soft ype: Setup Information ("inf) Genet Genet Genet Genet	Network					_

Specify the folder where the printer driver is stored as follows.

```
32-bit operating system
Specify [UFRII] | [uk_eng] | [32BIT] | [Driver] folders of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or downloaded file.
```

```
64-bit operating system
Specify [UFRII] | [uk_eng] | [x64] | [Driver] folders of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or downloaded file.
```

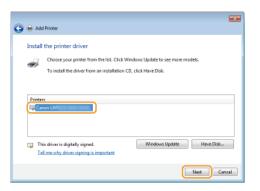
NOTE:

If you do not know whether to specify the 32-bit version or the 64-bit version OChecking the Bit Architecture

9 Click [OK].

Install Fro	m Disk	
4	Insert the manufacture's installation disk, and then make sure that the correct drive is selected below.	OK Cancel
	Copy manufacturer's files from: D:/UFRIN32BITI:Driver	Browse

10 Select your printer, and click [Next].



11 Change the printer name as necessary, and click [Next].

Type a printer	name	
Printername	Canon L60	
This printer will be	installed with the Canon LBP driv	er.
This printer will be	installed with the Canon LBP driv	er.
This printer will be	installed with the Canon LBP driv	er.
This printer will be	installed with the Canon LEP driv	g.
This printer will be	installed with the Canon LBP driv	er.
This printer will be	installed with the Canon LEP driv	er.

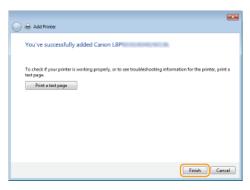
The installation starts.

12 Select [Do not share this printer], and click [Next].

If you want to share the printer, make sharing settings for the printer added with OAdding a Network Printer. (OCOnfiguring Settings on the Print Server Computer)

		- 20
G	He Add Printer	
	Printer Sharing If you want to date this printer, you must provide a date name. You can use the suggested name or type a new one. The dates name will be visible to other network users.	
	Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it	_
	Share name:	
	Location	
	Comment:	
		_
	Next Can	and in the second se

13 Click [Finish].



An icon for the installed printer is displayed in the printer folder.

COC	* 47	Search Devices and Printers	م
Add a device Add a printer		12	• 0
> Devices (4)			
 Printers and Faxes (3) 			
Cronn LBP Decement Witter			
7 kems			

Adding a Network Printer

1 Open the network folder.

Windows Vista/Server 2008

[Start] ▶ select [Network].

Windows 7/Server 2008 R2 [Start] > [Computer] > select [Network].

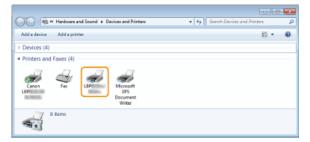
Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > [File Explorer] > select [Network].

2 Right-click the newly added printer icon, and click [Install].

					Ð	_
G v 🗣 + Network	•	٣	fy Search Netwo	tk:		٩
Organiza 💌 Install	Network and Sharing Center	Add a printer Ad	Id a wireless device			0
★ Favoritas (3) Librarias (5) Computer	Computer (9) Other Devices (3) Printers (1)					
🗣 Network	Canon LED	Install View device webpeg Create shortcut Properties	р р			
Canon LBP	Categories: P Network location: N					

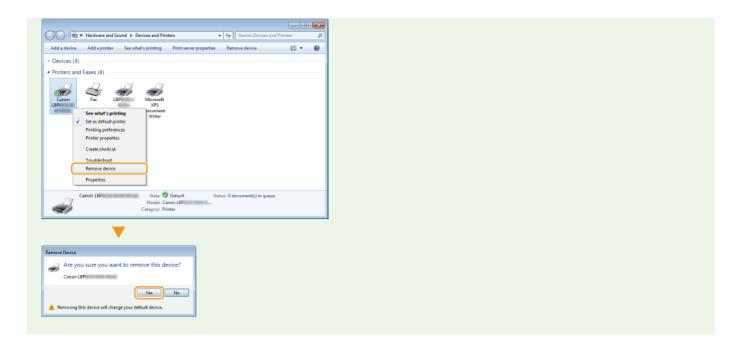
Installation for using WSD is complete when an icon for the printer is added to the printer folder.



NOTE

Deleting Unneeded Printer Icons

When you have finished installing the network printer, the icon added in step 13 of **CInstalling a Printer Driver** is no longer needed. To delete the icon, right-click it and select [Remove device] or [Delete] - click [Yes].



Setting Up a Print Server

You can lessen the burden on computers that request printing services by setting up a print server. You can also use the print server to install printer drivers on other computers, so that users of those computers do not need to install the printer driver from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM.

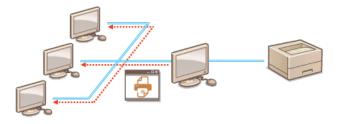
Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer

Configure printer sharing settings on the computer that you want to use as the print server. **Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer**



■Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)

You can use the print server to install printer drivers on other computers (clients) on the same network. This allows all of the computers to share the same printer. **OInstalling Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)**



Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer

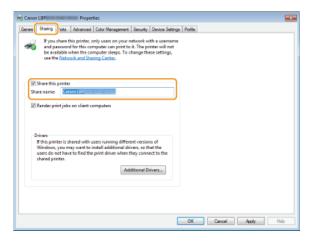
Configure printer sharing settings on the computer that you want to use as the print server. The following procedure assumes that you have already installed the printer driver on the computer that you plan to use as the print server. If you have not installed the printer driver already, see **Osetting Up a Print Server during Printer Driver Installation**.

IMPORTANT

- It may not be possible to install printer drivers over the network if the client computers and the print server use different versions of the operating system (32-bit or 64-bit).
- Consult your network administrator if you want to set up a print server in a domain environment.
- Log on to the computer with an administrator account.
- 2 Open the printer folder. ODisplaying the Printer Folder
- 3 Right-click the icon of the printer you are setting up and click [Printer properties] or [Properties].



4 Click the [Sharing] tab, select [Share this printer], and enter the share name.



NOTE: If [Change sharing options] is displayed Click [Change sharing options].



5 Install additional drivers as necessary. 🔤

- During the procedure explained in OInstalling Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings), this step is necessary if you want to use the print server to install printer drivers on computers that use different processor versions (32-bit or 64-bit) of the operating system.
 - **1** Click [Additional Drivers].
 - 2 Select the additional drivers, and click [OK].



Select additional drivers as follows, according to the operating system of the print server.

Print Server	Additional Drivers
32-bit OS	Select [x64].
64-bit OS	 Windows XP/Server 2003 Select [Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Server 2003] under [Version]. Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/ Server 2012 Select [x86] under [Processor].

NOTE:

If you do not know whether to specify the 32-bit version or the 64-bit version for Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, see **Checking the Bit Architecture**.

3 Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.

If you want to use printer drivers downloaded from the Canon website, download the additional drivers (printer drivers for processor versions that are different from that of the print server).

NOTE:

When the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] screen is displayed, click [Exit].

4 Click [Browse].

Install pri	nt drivers (i64 processor)	
\$	Please provide a printer driver.	OK
	Type the path where the file is located, and then click \ensuremath{OK}	Carton
	Copy files from:	Browse
		<u> </u>

5 Specify the folder where the additional drivers are stored, select the Inf file, and click [Open].

🦔 Locate File					- 21
Look in:	🔉 Diver		- 6) 🦸 😂 📑	
Recent Places	a	INF			
Desktop					
Libraries					
(Languter					
Network					
	File name:	The approximation paper			Open
	Files of type:	*infi*in_		+	Cancel

Specify the folder where the additional drivers are stored as follows.

When the print server uses a 32-bit OS Specify [UFRII] ▶ [uk_eng] ▶ [x64] ▶ [Driver] folders of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or downloaded file. When the print server uses a 64-bit OS Specify [UFRII] ▶ [uk_eng] ▶ [32BIT] ▶ [Driver] folders of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or downloaded file.

6 Click [OK].

Installation of the additional driver starts. Wait until you are returned to the [Sharing] tab.



Setting Up a Print Server during Printer Driver Installation

If you are using a printer connected by wireless LAN, you can set up a print server at the time when you install the printer driver. To set the computer onto which you are installing the print driver as a print server, select [Use as Shared Printer] in the [Printer Information] screen, which is displayed when you install the printer driver.

IMPORTANT

If you are using a printer connected by USB, you cannot set up a print server at the time when you install the printer driver. Set up the print server after installing the printer driver, by using the procedure described above.

NOTE

For the complete installation procedure, see **[] Installing**.

[Printer Information] screen

Printer Information	
Set the port to be used for Also, you can specify a nan	the selected printer.
Selected Printer:	Canon LBP
Use Driver:	Canon UFRIILT Driver Ver. 21.10
Ports	CMMPNP_240A6428AE73 *
	Add Port
Printer Name:	Canon LIP
Set as Default	
Use as Shared Printer	
Shared Name:	Canon LBP
	Drivers to Add
	Current Printer: 1 Number of Printers to Set: 1

[Use as Shared Printer]

When this is selected, the computer onto which you are installing the printer driver is designated as a print server.

[Shared Name]

Enter the name of the shared printer.

[Drivers to Add]

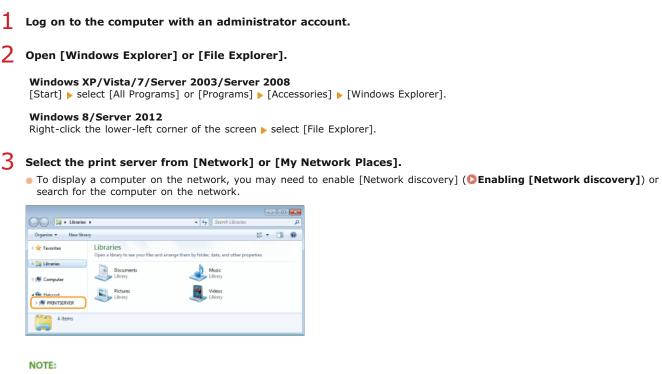
Click to install additional drivers. During the procedure explained in **OInstalling Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)**, additional drivers are necessary if you want to use the print server to install printer drivers on computers that use different processor versions (32-bit or 64-bit) of the operating system.

LINKS

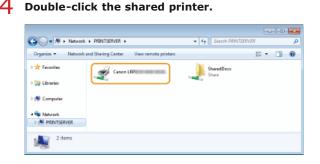
Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)

Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)

You can use the print server to install printer drivers for a shared printer on other computers (clients) on the same network. Because the printer drivers are installed via the print server, users of the other computers do not need to use the printer's CD-ROM/DVD-ROM.



If the print server is not discovered **OProblems via the Print Server**



Follow the instructions on the screen to install the printer drivers.

IMPORTANT:

4

It may not be possible to install printer drivers via the print server if the client computers and the print server use different processor versions (32-bit or 64-bit) of the operating system. In this case, install additional drivers on the print server. Oconfiguring Settings on the Print Server Computer

Updating and Uninstalling

This section explains how to update and uninstall printer drivers. It also explains how to uninstall the Product Extended Survey Program.

Updating

You can update installed printer drivers to the latest versions. OUpdating



Uninstalling

When you no longer need installed printer drivers or the Product Extended Survey Program, you can uninstall (delete) them. Olinistalling



Updating

computer. 1 Log on to the computer with an administrator account. 2 Download the printer driver from the Canon website (http://www.canon.com/). For more information about how to download the printer driver, see the driver download page for your printer. 3 Unzip the downloaded file. 4 Open the folder where the printer driver is stored. 32-bit operating system [UFRII] > [uk_eng] > [32BIT] folders 64-bit operating system [UFRII] > [uk_eng] > [x64] folders NOTE: If you do not know whether to specify the 32-bit version or the 64-bit version for Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, see **Checking the Bit Architecture**. 5 Double-click "Setup.exe." 😋 🔾 🗢 📕 🖛 UFRI 🕨 🌆 ► 32817 ► * 69

Proceed as follows to download the latest printer driver from the Canon website and update the printer driver installed on your



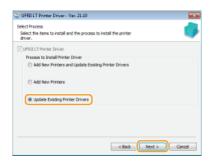
6 Read the License Agreement and click [Yes] to agree.







Select [Update Existing Printer Drivers], and click [Next].



9 Check the printer information in [Printer List for Driver Installation], and click [Start].

	following settings.	2
* Installation cannot be canceled once started.		1
rinter List for Driver Installation:		
= Update = hinter: Canon LBP		
Driver : Canon LOP Port : CNMPNP_240A6428AE73		
Port Coverar Diseasers		
lick (Start) to mutal.		

Updating of the printer driver starts.

10 Select [Restart My Computer Now], and click [Restart].



Uninstalling

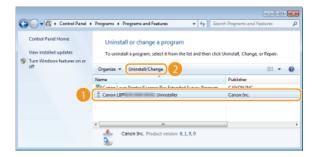
When you no longer need installed printer drivers or the Product Extended Survey Program, you can uninstall them to delete them from your computer.

OUninstalling Printer Drivers

OUninstalling the Product Extended Survey Program

Uninstalling Printer Drivers

- Log on to the computer with an administrator account.
- 2 Display [Programs and Features] or [Add or Remove Programs]. ODisplaying [Programs and Features] or [Add or Remove Programs]
- 3 Select the printer driver that you want to uninstall, and click [Uninstall/Change] or [Change/Remove].



The uninstaller starts.

NOTE:

If you cannot find the printer driver that you want to uninstall

Start the uninstaller from the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or from the printer driver file that you downloaded.

1 Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.

To start the uninstaller from a printer driver file that you downloaded, carry out the following step.

2 Open the folder where the uninstaller is stored.

```
32-bit operating system
```

[UFRII] > [uk_eng] > [32BIT] > [misc] folders of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or downloaded file

64-bit operating system

[UFRII] > [uk_eng] > [x64] > [misc] folders of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or downloaded file

NOTE:

If you do not know whether to specify the 32-bit version or the 64-bit version for Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, see **Checking the Bit Architecture**.

3 Double-click "UNINSTAL.exe."

🖉 🗸 🕶 📕 🖛 UFRO							
Organiza 💌 Burn ti	o dísc Eras	e this disc			1 T		
* Favorites		18.5 KB		2000			
		INSDRVINE	-	SetupUIK.dll			
🧊 Libraries	0	Configuration settings 4.06 KB	<u></u>	6.1.0.0 Canon Printer Driver In	staller		
	m.	Uninstani		UNINSTAL.axe		١.	
💻 Computer	63	Configuration settings 3.66 KB	340	Canon Printer Driver Un CANON INC.	ninstaller	L 1	
Network	10.00	UnimUKdi	-1254	Contraction.)	
- THE TAKE	61	6.1.0.0					
	-40	Canon Printer Driver Uninstaller					

4 Select the printer that you want to uninstall, and click [Delete].

nter Name	Driver Name	Version
Canon LB P	Canon LBP	21.10

IMPORTANT:

If you click [Cleanup], then all files, directory information and other data related to all printers are deleted, not only for the selected printer but for all printers in the list. Normally you should use [Delete] to uninstall printer drivers. Click [Cleanup] when no printer is displayed in the list.

5 Click [Yes].

Warning	8
4	Are you sure you want to delete the printer 'Canon LBP' ?
	Yes No

The uninstall starts.

When the following screen appears, click [Yes] or [Yes To All].

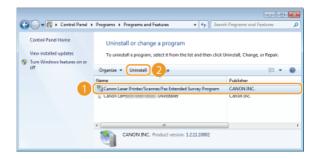


6 Click [Exit].

inter Name	Driver Name	Version

Uninstalling the Product Extended Survey Program

- 1 Log on to the computer with an administrator account.
- 2 Display [Programs and Features] or [Add or Remove Programs]. ODisplaying [Programs and Features] or [Add or Remove Programs]
- 3 Select [Canon Laser Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program], and click [Uninstall] or [Remove].



4 Click [OK].



Troubleshooting

If you encounter problems during installation of the printer driver, see the following sections before contacting Canon.

Problems with the Wireless LAN Connection
 Problems with the USB Connection
 Problems via the Print Server

Problems with the Wireless LAN Connection

The printer that you want does not appear in [Printer List].

Olick [Search Again] to search for the printer on the network.



Check whether the printer is ready to connect to the network.
 Cannot Connect to the Wireless LAN

Cannot Connect to the Wireless LAN



Check the status of your computer.

- Have the settings of the computer and the wireless router been completed?
- Are the cables of the wireless router (including the power cord and LAN cable) correctly plugged in?
 Is the wireless router turned ON?

If the problem persists even after checking the above:

- Turn OFF all of the devices, and then turn them ON again.
- Wait for a while, and try again to connect to the network.



Check whether the printer is turned ON.

• If the printer is turned ON, turn it OFF, and then turn it back ON.



Check the installation site of the printer and the wireless router.

- Is the printer too far from the wireless router?
- Are there any obstacles such as walls between the printer and the wireless router?
 - Are there any appliances such as microwave ovens or digital cordless phones that emit radio waves near the printer?





Reset the wireless LAN settings.

Configuring Wireless LAN Network Settings

NOTE

When you need to manually set up the connection

If the wireless router is set up as described below, enter the required information manually.

- The stealth function is enabled.
- ANY connection refusal* is enabled.
- The WEP key number to use is set to a number from 2 to 4.
- The automatically generated WEP key (hexadecimal) is selected.
- * A function in which the wireless router refuses the connection if the SSID of the device to be connected is set to "ANY" or is blank.

When you need to change the settings of the wireless router

If the wireless router is set up as described below, change the settings of the router.

- MAC address filtering is enabled.
- When only IEEE 802.11n is used for the wireless communication, WEP is selected or the WPA/WPA2 encryption method is set to TKIP.

Problems with the USB Connection

Installation does not start.

- Is the printer turned ON?
- Are the printer and the computer connected correctly via a USB cable?
 Connecting via USB
- Was the printer turned ON before you installed the printer driver? If so, turn OFF the printer and unplug the USB cable, and then reinstall the printer driver.
 Installing

IMPORTANT:

Always turn ON the printer when the following screen is displayed.



First delete the USB class driver, and then reinstall the printer driver.
 Deleting the USB Class Driver
 Installing

Problems via the Print Server

You cannot find the print server to connect to.

- Are the print server and computer connected correctly?
- Is the print server running?
- Do you have user rights to connect to the print server? If you are not sure, consult the print server's administrator.
- Is [Network discovery] enabled? (Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012)

©Enabling [Network discovery]

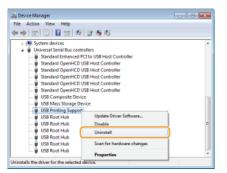
Deleting the USB Class Driver

Delete the USB class driver when it is not possible to install the printer driver correctly when using a USB connection. Note that even if you delete the USB class driver, it will be installed again automatically when you connect the printer and your computer with a USB cable.

- Connect the printer and your computer with a USB cable (Connecting via USB), and turn ON the printer.
- 2 Log on to the computer with an administrator account.
- **3** Display [Device Manager]. Displaying [Device Manager]
- **4** Double-click [Universal Serial Bus controllers].

🚔 Device Manager	
File Action View Help	
* * [1] 📓 m 🕺	
A State A State	*
Disk drives	
Display adapters	
DVD/CD-ROM drives	
B Apple Human Interface Devices	
D Controllers	
b - IEEE 1394 Bus host controllers	
b	
b - A Mice and other pointing devices	
Monitors	-
Network adapters	
b - D Other devices	
Portable Devices	
Processors	
5 4 Sound, video and game controllers	
5 JE System devices	
D - W Universal Serial Bus controllers	*

5 Right-click [USB Printing Support], and click [Uninstall].



IMPORTANT:

Be careful to delete [USB Printing Support] only, and never delete any other devices or device drivers Windows may not operate properly if you delete other devices or device drivers.

NOTE:

If [USB Printing Support] is not displayed

[USB Printing Support] is not displayed if the USB class driver is not installed properly. In this case, close [Device Manager] without doing anything further.

6 Click [OK].

Confirm D	levice Uninstall
Ŧ	USB Printing Support
Warring:	You are about to uninstall this device from your system.
	OK Cancel

- 7 Close [Device Manager].
- 8 Unplug the USB cable, and restart your computer.

LINKS

Connecting via USB

Appendix

The Appendix provides information you should know, such as how to connect the printer to your computer, how to use the Installation Guide, disclaimers, and copyright information. It also explains how to start the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool manually. Refer to it as necessary.

Connecting the Printer to a Computer

There are two ways to connect the printer to a computer: "via wireless LAN," and "via USB." Select the connection method that best suits your communication environment and devices.

Connecting via Wireless LAN





Connect the printer to a router via wireless communications. **©Connecting via** Wireless LAN

Connecting via USB



Connect the printer to a computer via a USB cable. OCOnnecting via USB

NOTE

The supported connection methods differ depending on the printer you are using. Refer to the "e-Manual" supplied with your printer for information about the supported connection methods.

Connecting via Wireless LAN

Connect the printer to a computer via a wireless LAN router. The printer and the router are connected wirelessly (via radio waves), so you do not need a LAN cable. To make wireless LAN settings, use the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool from your computer.

Things to Check before Starting Configuring Wireless LAN Network Settings

Things to Check before Starting



- Have the computer and the router been connected properly? For more information, see the instruction manuals for the devices you are using, or contact the manufacturer.
- Have the network settings been completed on the computer? If the network has not been set up properly, you will not be able to use the printer on the wireless LAN network, even if you perform the rest of the procedure below.

IMPORTANT

Risk of Information Leak

If the printer is connected to an unsecured network, your personal information might be leaked to a third party because radio waves used in wireless communication can go anywhere nearby, even beyond walls. Use wireless LAN connection at your own discretion and at your own risk.

Wireless LAN Security Standards

Refer to the "e-Manual" supplied with your printer for information about the security standards supported by the printer.

NOTE

- The printer does not come with a wireless LAN router. Have one ready as necessary.
- The wireless router must conform to the IEEE 802.11b/g/n standards and be able to communicate in the 2.4 GHz band. For more information, see the instruction manual provided with the router, or contact the manufacturer.
- If you are using the printer in your office, consult your network administrator.

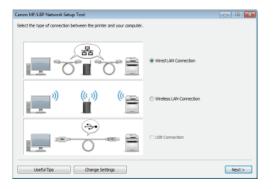
Configuring Wireless LAN Network Settings

Log on to the computer with an administrator account.

- Start the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool.
 - There are two ways to start the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool: "Start it from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM," and "Start it from a downloaded file."
 Starting from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM

Starting from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM

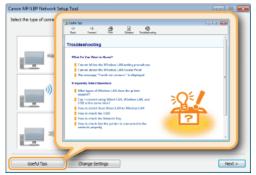
3 Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the wireless LAN settings.



NOTE:

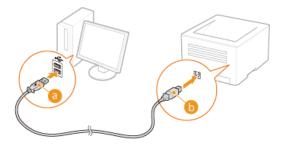
If there is something you do not understand

Click [Useful Tips] at the bottom left of the screen to display troubleshooting tips.



Connecting via USB

Connect the printer to a computer with a USB cable. Connect the flat connector of the USB cable (a) to the computer, and connect the square connector (b) to the printer.



NOTE

- If your printer does not come with a USB cable, you will need to provide your own cable separately.
- Make sure that the USB cable you use has the following mark.



• If a Plug and Play automatic setup screen like the one shown below is displayed when you connect the USB cable, click [Close] or [Cancel] to close it.

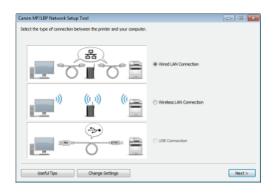
not successfully installed	
Ready to use No driver found	
inital properly?	
	Close
	Ready to use No driver found

LINKS

Deleting the USB Class Driver

MF/LBP Network Setup Tool

The MF/LBP Network Setup Tool is a utility that allows you to configure initial network settings by following instructions on the screen. The Tool starts automatically when you install a printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM. If you want to start it alone manually, you can start it from the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM or start it directly from a file downloaded from the Canon website.



Starting from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Starting from a Downloaded File

NOTE

- The system environment required to use the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool is the same as the system environment required for the printer driver. System Requirements
- See **Configuring Wireless LAN Network Settings** for information about how to configure initial network settings by using the MF/LBP Network Setup Tool.

Starting from the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM

- Log on to the computer with an administrator account.
- 2 Insert the User Software CD-ROM/DVD-ROM into the drive on the computer.
- **3** Click [Start Software Programs].



NOTE:

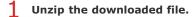
- If the above screen does not appear ODisplaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen
- If [AutoPlay] is displayed, click [Run MInst.exe].

4 Click [Start] of [MF/LBP Network Setup Tool].

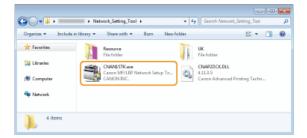
Start Software Programs	
-	
Starts programs from the CD/DVD. Click [Start] to the right of the program you want to start.	
MF/LEP Network Setup Tool Configures printer settings in order to connect to the network.	Readme
	Start
😹 🚇 Manual Uninstaller	
R The manuals installed by this setup will be uninstalled.	(Start)
Back	Cancel
Date	Cancer

Starting from a Downloaded File

The MF/LBP Network Setup Tool is included among the files that you download to install a printer driver. Start by downloading the printer driver file, which contains the printer driver and associated files, from the Canon website (http://www.canon.com/).



2 Double-click "CNAN1STK.exe" in the [Network_Setting_Tool] folder.



Using the Installation Guide

The Installation Guide is a manual that can be viewed on your computer. It provides information about the installation of printer drivers. You can find pages quickly by searching for what you want to do or by entering keywords.

How to Find the Topic You Are Looking For

You can find the page you are looking for using the following three methods.

Search the contents

You can find the page you are looking for by selecting a topic from the [Contents] tab on the left side of the screen, or by selecting a chapter icon from the icons next to the topics.

OTop Page

C Topic Page

Search by keyword

You can search by entering keywords, such as "USB" or "environment." Pages containing the keywords are displayed. You can also enter phrases such as "update driver." The search will find topics containing all of the words in the phrase (AND search).

Search Tab

Search the site map

Click [Site Map] on the top part of the screen to display a list of all the Installation Guide topics. From there you can find the topic you are looking for.

Site Map

NOTE

System requirements

To use the Installation Guide, one of the following Web browsers is required. The content of the Installation Guide may not display correctly if a browser not listed below is used.

Internet Explorer 7.0/8.0/9.0/10.0/11.0, Firefox 10.0.x ESR/16.0.x

Screen Configuration of the Installation Guide

The Installation Guide is divided into different screens, and the content of each screen varies.

Top Page

This page appears when the Installation Guide is started.



👩 Canon logo

Click to return to the top page from any other page.

[Contents] tab/[Search] tab

-

Click to toggle the display between the [Contents] tab and [Search] tab.

Contents

Displays the titles of chapters (). Place the mouse pointer over one of the titles to display the topics in that chapter on the right. Click a topic to display its page.

Contents Search	
Y Introduction	Installing the Driver is
🛨 Installing	Installing from the Supplied Easy!
Setting Up a Print Server	Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website
$oldsymbol{d}$ Updating and Uninstalling	Installing to Use WSD sinstalled before starting.
O Troubleshooting	suppreci with your printer.
Appendix	S 12-20

📵 [Тор]

Click to return to the top page from any other page.

🙆 [Site Map]

Click to display the titles of all Installation Guide topics.

🕧 [Help]

Click to display information on how to view the Installation Guide, how to perform a search, and other information.

🕚 [Print]

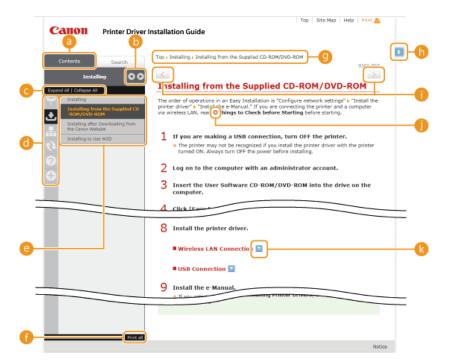
Click to print the currently displayed topic page.

🜔 [Notice]

Click to view important information you should know when using the printer.

Topic Page

Topic pages contain information about how to install printer drivers.



[Contents]

Chapter icons and topic titles are displayed in this tab.

🕒 🔍 / 🗩

The [Contents] tab can be widened and narrowed.

[Expand All]/[Collapse All]

Click [Expand All] to display all of the subsections of all topics. Click [Collapse All] to close all of the subsections of all the topics.

60 Chapter icons

Click a chapter icon to navigate to the top of the corresponding chapter.

Copics

Displays the topics of the selected chapter. If "+" is displayed on a topic, clicking it displays the subsections of that topic. Click "-" to close an expanded topic.

[Print all]

All pages of the selected chapter are opened in a separate window. You can print them as necessary.

(i) Navigation

This shows which chapter topic you are currently viewing.

6 🖻

Click to return to the page top.

1 >

Click to display the previous or next topic.

00

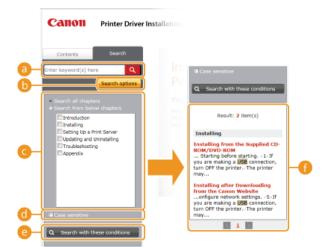
Click to jump to the corresponding page. To return to the previous page, click the [Back] button on your Web browser.

🚷 🔛

Click to display hidden detailed descriptions. Click again to close the detailed descriptions.

Search Tab

This tab contains a text box to perform a search and find the page you are looking for.



[Enter keyword(s) here]

Enter one or more keywords and click **Q** to display search results in a results list. You can enter a phrase to find pages that contain all of the words in the phrase. To find an exact phrase, enclose it in double quotation marks.

[Search options]

Click to specify search conditions such as the scope of the search and case sensitivity.

G Search scope selector

You can use this to select the individual chapters to search. This allows you to search more efficiently, when you can predict the chapters containing the topic that you are looking for.

6 Search options selector

Select the check box to make your search case-sensitive.

[Search with these conditions]

(() and **(()** specify the conditions. After setting them, press this to perform the search and display the results in the [Result] list.

🗿 Result list

This displays pages that contain the specified keywords. From the results, locate the page you are looking for and click the topic title of the page. If the results cannot be displayed on one page, click ||| or a page number to display the results on the corresponding page.

Site Map

This page displays the titles of all topics in the Installation Guide.

-	Canon Printer Driver Installation Guide	Top Site Map Help Print 💩	
0- [0 9 11 🚠 🕹 🍸		
	₩ Introduction	▼ Next	
b –	System Requirements		
	速 Installing	A Previous Vext	-d
	Installing from the Supplied CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Installing after Downloading from the Canon Website Installing to Use WSD		
	and Setting Up a Print Server	▲ Previous ▼ Next	
	Configuring Settings on the Print Server Computer Installing Drivers via the Print Server (Client Settings)		

6 Chapter icons

Click to jump to the table of contents of the selected chapter.

🚯 Topic titles

Displays titles and topics. Click a title to jump to the corresponding topic page.

C 主

Click to return to the page top.

ⓓ ▲/▼

Click to go to the previous or next chapter.

Viewing the Installation Guide

Marks

Restrictions and cautions regarding the handling of the printer, useful tips, and other information are indicated using the marks below.

IMPORTANT	Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the printer
	correctly and avoid damage to the printer or property.

NOTE Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure.

Buttons

Buttons on the computer display are indicated with the following notation:

Example from the Installation Guide: [Next]

Computer Screens

Depending on the operating system you are using, the appearance of the displays in this guide may differ slightly from the displays that you see. Also, the appearance of printer drivers and software may differ depending on their version.

Other

This section describes basic Windows operations and includes disclaimers, copyright information, and other information.

Basic Windows Operations

Displaying the Printer Folder
Enabling [Network discovery]
Displaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen
Checking the Bit Architecture
Displaying [Programs and Features] or [Add or Remove Programs]
Displaying [Device Manager]

Displaying the Printer Folder

Windows XP Professional/Server 2003 [Start] > select [Printers and Faxes].

Windows XP Home Edition [Start] ▶ select [Control Panel] ▶ [Printers and Other Hardware] ▶ [Printers and Faxes].

Windows Vista [Start] > select [Control Panel] > [Printer].

Windows 7/Server 2008 R2 [Start] > select [Devices and Printers].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Control Panel] > [View devices and printers].

Windows Server 2008

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > double-click [Printers].

Enabling [Network discovery]

If you are using Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008/Server 2012, enable [Network discovery] to view the computers on your network.

Windows Vista

[Start] • select [Control Panel] • [View network status and tasks] • under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

Windows 7/Server 2008 R2

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > [View network status and tasks] > [Change advanced sharing settings] > under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen \triangleright select [Control Panel] \triangleright [View network status and tasks] \triangleright [Change advanced sharing settings] \triangleright under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

Windows Server 2008

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > double-click [Network and Sharing Center] > under [Network discovery], select [Turn on network discovery].

■ Displaying the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] Screen

If your computer does not display the [CD-ROM/DVD-ROM Setup] screen after you insert the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM, follow the procedure below. This following example uses "D:" as the name of the CD-ROM/DVD-ROM drive. The CD-ROM/DVD-ROM drive name may be different on your computer.

Windows XP/Server 2003

[Start] > select [Run] > enter "D:\MInst.exe" > click [OK].

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008

[Start] • enter "D:\MInst.exe" in [Search programs and files] or [Start Search] • press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Run] > enter "D:\MInst.exe" > click [OK].

If you are not sure whether your computer is running 32-bit or 64-bit Windows, follow the procedure below to check.



Windows Vista/7/Server 2008 [Start] > select [Control Panel].

Windows 8/Server 2012 Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > select [Control Panel].

Display [System].

Windows Vista/7/8/Server 2008 R2/Server 2012 Click [System and Security] or [System and Maintenance] > [System].

Windows Server 2008 Double-click [System].

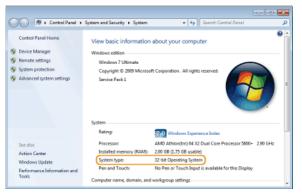
3 Check the bit architecture.

32-bit operating systems

[32-bit Operating System] is displayed.

64-bit operating systems

[64-bit Operating System] is displayed.



Displaying [Programs and Features] or [Add or Remove Programs]

Windows XP/Server 2003

[Start] > [Control Panel] > select [Add or Remove Programs].

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008 R2

[Start] > [Control Panel] > select [Uninstall a Program].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen > [Control Panel] > select [Uninstall a Program].

Windows Server 2008

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > double-click [Programs and Features].

Displaying [Device Manager]

Windows XP

[Start] > [Control Panel] > [Performance and Maintenance] > [System] > [Hardware] > select [Device Manager].

Windows Vista/7/Server 2008 R2

[Start] > [Control Panel] > [Hardware and Sound] or [Hardware] > select [Device Manager].

Windows 8/Server 2012

Right-click the lower-left corner of the screen | [Control Panel] | [Hardware and Sound] | select [Device Manager].

Windows Server 2003

[Start] > [Control Panel] > [System] > [Hardware] > select [Device Manager].

Windows Server 2008

[Start] > select [Control Panel] > double-click [Device Manager].

Notice

Disclaimers

- The information in this document is subject to change without notice.
- CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

Copyright

Copyright CANON INC. 2013

No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.

Trademarks

- Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, Mac, Mac OS, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- All other product and brand names are registered trademarks, trademarks or service marks of their respective owners.